

SIEMENS



SIMATIC S7-400

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Catalog
ST 400

Edition
May 2017

siemens.com/s7-400

Related catalogs

SIMATIC SIMATIC PCS 7 Process Control System System components E86060-K4678-A111-C3-7600	ST PCS 7 	SITRAIN Training for Industry Only available in German E86060-K6850-A101-C5	ITC 
SIMATIC Products for Totally Integrated Automation E86060-K4670-A101-B5-7600	ST 70 	Products for Automation and Drives Interactive Catalog DVD E86060-D4001-A510-D7-7600	CA 01 
SIMATIC HMI / PC-based Automation Human Machine Interface Systems PC-based Automation E86060-K4680-A101-C4-7600	ST 80/ST PC 	Industry Mall Information and Ordering Platform on the Internet: www.siemens.com/industrymall	
Industrial Communication SIMATIC NET E86060-K6710-A101-B8-7600	IK PI 		

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIMATIC S7-400



Catalog ST 400 · May 2017

Refer to the Industry Mall for current updates of this catalog:

www.siemens.com/industrymall

The products contained in this catalog can also be found in the Interactive Catalog CA 01.

Article No.: E86060-D4001-A500-D7-7600

Please contact your local Siemens branch.

© Siemens AG 2017



The products and systems described in this catalog are manufactured/distributed under application of a certified quality management system in accordance with DIN EN ISO 9001 (Certified Registration No. 000656 QM08. The certificate is recognized by all IQNet countries.

Introduction	1/2
Central processing units	1/4
Digital modules	1/50
Analog modules	1/58
Function modules	1/70
Communication	1/92
Connection method	1/115
Racks	1/118
Interface modules	1/121
Power supply	1/130
Accessories	1/136
Appendix	1/137

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller



1/2	Introduction	1/92	Communication
1/4	Central processing units	1/92	CP 440
1/4	<u>Standard CPUs</u>	1/93	CP 441-1, CP 441-2
1/4	CPU 412	1/95	Loadable drivers for CP 441-2 and CP 341
1/8	CPU 414	1/96	CP 443-5 Basic
1/13	CPU 416	1/98	CP 443-5 Extended
1/18	CPU 417	1/100	CP 443-1
1/21	<u>SIPLUS S7-400 standard CPUs</u>	1/103	CP 443-1 Advanced
1/21	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412	1/107	CP 443-1 OPC UA
1/22	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414	1/109	TIM 4R-IE for WAN and Ethernet, TIM 4R-IE DNP3
1/23	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416		
1/24	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 417		
1/25	<u>Fail-safe CPUs</u>		
1/25	CPU 414F		
1/29	CPU 416F		
1/34	<u>High-availability CPUs</u>		
1/34	CPU 412H, CPU 414H, CPU 416H, CPU 417H		
1/39	Sync-module for coupling the CPU 41xH		
1/40	Y-link for S7-400H		
1/42	<u>SIPLUS S7-400 high-availability CPUs</u>		
1/42	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412H		
1/43	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414H		
1/44	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416H		
1/45	SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 417H		
1/46	SIPLUS sync module for connecting the CPU 41xH		
1/47	SIPLUS Y-Link for S7-400H		
1/48	<u>Interface modules</u>		
1/49	<u>SIPLUS S7-400 interface modules</u>		
1/50	Digital modules	1/110	SIPLUS S7-400 communication
1/56	SIPLUS S7-400 digital modules	1/110	SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1
1/58	Analog modules	1/112	SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1 Advanced
1/68	SIPLUS S7-400 analog modules	1/114	SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-5 Extended
1/70	Function modules	1/115	Connection methods
1/70	FM 450-1 counter module		
1/72	FM 451 positioning module	1/118	Racks
1/74	FM 452 cam controller		
1/76	FM 453 positioning module	1/120	SIPLUS S7-400 racks
1/78	FM 455 controller module		
1/81	<u>FM 458-1 DP application module</u>	1/121	Interface modules
1/82	FM 458-1 DP basic module	1/121	IM 460-0
1/84	EXM 438-1 input/output expansion	1/122	IM 461-0
1/86	EXM 448 universal communications expansion module	1/123	IM 460-1
1/87	D7-SYS	1/124	IM 461-1
1/88	Accessories	1/125	IM 460-3
		1/126	IM 461-3
		1/127	IM 463-2
1/91	SIPLUS S7-400 function modules	1/128	SIPLUS S7-400 interface modules
		1/130	Power supplies
		1/134	SIPLUS power supplies
		1/136	Accessories
		1/136	Labeling sheets
		1/136	Spare parts

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Introduction

S7-400/S7-400H/S7-400F/FH

Overview

The S7-400 is the most powerful PLC in the family of SIMATIC controllers. It enables successful automation solutions with Totally Integrated Automation (TIA). The S7-400 is an automation platform for system solutions in production and process engineering, and it is characterized primarily by its modularity and performance reserves.



S7-400

- The power PLC for the mid to high-end performance ranges.
- The solution for even the most demanding tasks.
- With a comprehensive range of modules and performance-graded CPUs for optimal adaptation to the automation task.
- Flexible in use through simple implementation of distributed structures.
- User-friendly connections.
- Optimal communication and networking options.
- User-friendly handling and uncomplicated design without a fan.
- Can be expanded without problems when the tasks increase.
- Multicomputing:
Simultaneous operation of several CPUs in one S7-400 central controller.
Multicomputing distributes the overall performance power of an S7-400. For example, complex tasks can be divided into technologies such as open-loop control, computing or communication, and assigned to different CPUs. And every CPU can be assigned its own local I/O.
- Modularity:
The powerful backplane bus of the S7-400 and the communication interfaces that can be connected direct to the CPU enable high-performance operation of a host of communication lines. This enables, for example, division into one communication path for HMI and programming tasks, one for high-performance and equidistant motion control components, and one for a "normal" I/O fieldbus. Additionally required connections to MES/ERP systems or the Internet can also be implemented.
- Engineering and diagnostics:
The S7-400 is configured and programmed extremely efficiently together with the SIMATIC Engineering Tools particularly in the case of extensive automation solutions with a high engineering component. For this purpose, high-level languages such as SCL and graphical engineering tools for sequential controls, state graph programs and technology-oriented diagrams are available, for example.



S7-400H

- Fault-tolerant automation system with redundant design.
- For applications with high fail-safety requirements. Processes with high restart costs, expensive downtimes, little supervision, and few maintenance options.
- Redundant central functions.
- Increases availability of I/O: switched I/O configuration.
- Also possible to use I/Os with standard availability: single-sided configuration.
- Hot stand-by: automatic reaction-free switching to the standby unit in the event of a fault.
- Configuration with two separate or one divided central rack.
- Connection of switched I/O via redundant PROFIBUS DP or via system-redundant PROFINET IO.

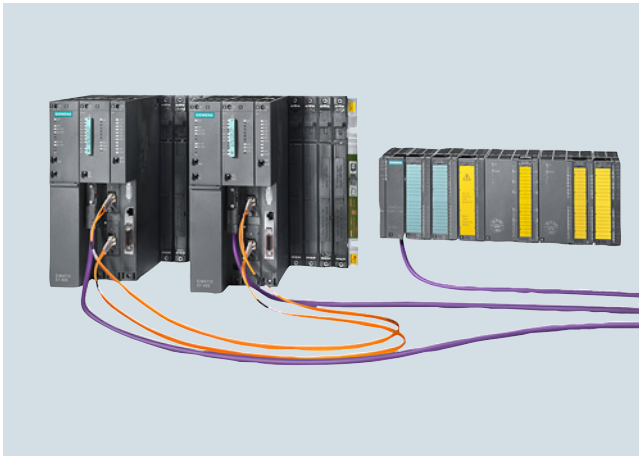
SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Introduction

S7-400/S7-400H/S7-400F/FH

1

Overview (continued)



S7-400F/FH

- Failsafe automation system for plants with increased safety requirements
- Complies with safety requirements to SIL 3 in accordance with IEC 61508, AK6 in accordance with DIN V 19250 and Cat. 4 in accordance with EN 954-1
- If required, also fault tolerant through redundant design
- Without additional wiring of the safety-related I/O
- Safety-relevant communication via PROFIBUS DP with PROFIsafe profile
- Based on S7-400H and distributed I/Os ET 200M with fail-safe modules
- Standard modules for non-safety-related applications can also be used in the automation system
- Isolation module for joint use of fail-safe and standard modules in safety mode in one ET 200M

Technical specifications

General technical data SIMATIC S7-400

Degree of protection	IP20
Ambient temperature	0 to 60 °C
Relative humidity	5 to 95 %, no condensation
Atmospheric pressure	1080 to 795 hPa (corresponds to an altitude of -1000 m to +2,000 m)
Electromagnetic compatibility	
• Interference immunity	According to EN 61000-6-2
• Emitted interference	According to EN 61000-6-4
Mechanical load	
• Vibration, test according to / tested with	IEC 60068-2-6 (sine) 10 to 58 Hz; constant amplitude 0.075 mm; 58 to 500 Hz; constant acceleration 1 g; duration of oscillation: 10 frequency sweeps per axis in each direction of the three mutually perpendicular axes
• Shock, test according to / tested with	IEC 60068-2-27 Type of shock: Half-sine; strength of the shock 10 g (peak value), duration 6 ms direction of shock: 100 shocks in each of the 3 mutually perpendicular axes.

General technical data SIPLUS S7-400

Ambient temperature range	-25/0 ... +60/70 °C
Conformal coating	Coating of the printed circuit boards and the electronic components
Technical data	The technical data of the standard product applies except for the ambient conditions.

Ambient conditions

Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
• With condensation, max.	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
• against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation in corrosive atmospheres!
• against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
• against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 412

Overview



CPU 412-1, CPU 412-2 and CPU 412-2 PN

- The low-cost starter solution for the medium performance range
- Can be used in small and medium-sized systems with requirements of the medium performance range

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7412-1XJ07-0AB0	6ES7412-2XK07-0AB0	6ES7412-2EK07-0AB0
	CPU412-1, MPI/DP, 512 KB	CPU412-2, MPI/DP, 1 MB	CPU412-2 PN, 1 MB, 2 INTERFACES
General information			
Product type designation	CPU 412-1	CPU 412-2	CPU 412-2 PN
Engineering with			
• Programming package	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.5 or higher with HSP 262
Supply voltage			
Rated value (DC)			
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power loss			
Power loss, typ.	3.5 W	4.5 W	5.5 W
Memory			
Work memory			
• integrated	512 kbyte	1 Mbyte	1 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	256 kbyte	512 kbyte	512 kbyte
• integrated (for data)	256 kbyte	512 kbyte	512 kbyte
Load memory			
• expandable FEPRM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	512 kbyte	512 kbyte	512 kbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times			
for bit operations, typ.	31.25 ns	31.25 ns	31.25 ns
for word operations, typ.	31.25 ns	31.25 ns	31.25 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	31.25 ns	31.25 ns	31.25 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	62.5 ns	62.5 ns	62.5 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity			
S7 counter			
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC counter			
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 times			
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC timer			
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data areas and their retentivity			
Flag			
• Number, max.	4 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	4 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	4 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7412-1XJ07-0AB0 CPU412-1, MPI/DP, 512 KB	6ES7412-2XK07-0AB0 CPU412-2, MPI/DP, 1 MB	6ES7412-2EK07-0AB0 CPU412-2 PN, 1 MB, 2 INTERFACES
Address area			
I/O address area			
• Inputs	4 kbyte	4 kbyte	4 kbyte
• Outputs	4 kbyte	4 kbyte	4 kbyte
Process image			
• Inputs, adjustable	4 kbyte	4 kbyte	4 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	4 kbyte	4 kbyte	4 kbyte
Time of day			
Clock			
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Operating hours counter			
• Number	16	16	16
Interfaces			
Interfaces/bus type	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFINET (2 ports)
Number of RS 485 interfaces	1; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	1; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP
1. Interface			
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI
Functionality			
• MPI	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP master	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	Yes	Yes	Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32	32	32
2. Interface			
Interface type		Integrated	PROFINET
Physics		RS 485 / PROFIBUS	Ethernet RJ45
Interface types			
• Number of ports			2
Functionality			
• DP master		Yes	No
• DP slave		Yes	No
• PROFINET IO Controller			Yes
• PROFINET IO Device			Yes
• PROFINET CBA			Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.		64	
Isochronous mode			
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; Via PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET interface
Communication functions			
PG/OP communication	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data record routing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Global data communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 basic communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S5 compatible communication			
• supported	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5
Standard communication (FMS)			
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 412**Technical specifications (continued)**

Article number	6ES7412-1XJ07-0AB0 CPU412-1, MPI/DP, 512 KB	6ES7412-2XK07-0AB0 CPU412-2, MPI/DP, 1 MB	6ES7412-2EK07-0AB0 CPU412-2 PN, 1 MB, 2 INTERFACES
Open IE communication			
• TCP/IP			Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs 46
- Number of connections, max.			
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Via CP 443-1 Adv. and loadable FB	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 Adv. and loadable FBs 46
- Number of connections, max.			
• UDP			Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs 46
- Number of connections, max.			
Web server			
• supported	No	No	Yes
Number of connections			
• overall	48	48	48
Standards, approvals, certificates			
Use in hazardous areas			
• ATEX	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions			
Ambient temperature during operation			
• min.	0 °C	0 °C	0 °C
• max.	60 °C	60 °C	60 °C
Configuration			
Know-how protection			
• User program protection/password protection	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions			
Width	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	219 mm	219 mm	219 mm
Weights			
Weight, approx.	700 g	700 g	750 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controllerCentral processing units
Standard CPUs

CPU 412

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
CPU 412-1 Work memory 512 KB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7412-1XJ07-0AB0	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps - Without PG interface - With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
CPU 412-2 Work memory 1 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7412-2XK07-0AB0	RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps - Without PG interface - With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0
CPU 412-2 PN Work memory 1 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFINET interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7412-2EK07-0AB0	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect system Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps - Without PG interface 1 unit 100 units - With PG interface 1 unit 100 units	6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0
RAM memory card 64 KB 256 KB 1 MB 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB 16 MB 64 MB	6ES7952-0AF00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0	RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS	6GK1500-0EA02
FEPROM memory card 64 KB 256 KB 1 MB 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB 16 MB 32 MB 64 MB	6ES7952-0KF00-0AA0 6ES7952-0KH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0	PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for fast mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter; max. delivery unit 1 000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m	6XV1830-0EH10
MPI cable For connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; length: 5 m	6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0		
Slot number labels 1 set (spare part)	6ES7912-0AA00-0AA0		
SIMATIC Manual Collection Electronic manuals on DVD, multi-language: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0		
SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2		

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units
Standard CPUs

CPU 414

Overview



CPU 414-2, CPU 414-3 and CPU 414-3 PN/DP

- CPUs for high demands in the mid-level performance range
- Applicable for plants with additional demands on programming scope and processing speed
- Integrated PROFINET functions in CPU 414-3 PN/DP

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7414-2XL07-0AB0 CPU414-2, MPI/DP, 2 MB	6ES7414-3XM07-0AB0 CPU414-3, 4 MB, 3 INTERFACES	6ES7414-3EM07-0AB0 CPU414-3 PN/DP, 4 MB, 3 INTERFACES
General information			
Product type designation	CPU 414-2	CPU 414-3	CPU414-3 PN/DP
Engineering with			
• Programming package	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.5 or higher with HSP 262
Supply voltage			
Rated value (DC)			
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power loss			
Power loss, typ.	4.5 W	5.5 W	6.5 W
Memory			
Work memory			
• integrated	2 Mbyte	4 Mbyte	4 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	1 Mbyte	2 Mbyte	2 Mbyte
• integrated (for data)	1 Mbyte	2 Mbyte	2 Mbyte
Load memory			
• expandable FEPRM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	512 kbyte	512 kbyte	512 kbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times			
for bit operations, typ.	18.75 ns	18.75 ns	18.75 ns
for word operations, typ.	18.75 ns	18.75 ns	18.75 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	18.75 ns	18.75 ns	18.75 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	37.5 ns	37.5 ns	37.5 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity			
S7 counter			
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC counter			
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 times			
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC timer			
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data areas and their retentivity			
Flag			
• Number, max.	8 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	8 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	8 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7414-2XL07-0AB0 CPU414-2, MPI/DP, 2 MB	6ES7414-3XM07-0AB0 CPU414-3, 4 MB, 3 INTERFACES	6ES7414-3EM07-0AB0 CPU414-3 PN/DP, 4 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Address area			
I/O address area			
• Inputs	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	8 kbyte
• Outputs	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	8 kbyte
Process image			
• Inputs, adjustable	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	8 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	8 kbyte
Time of day			
Clock			
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Operating hours counter			
• Number	16	16	16
Interfaces			
Interfaces/bus type	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFINET (2 ports), 1 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)
Number of RS 485 interfaces	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	1; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces		1; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)	1; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
1. Interface			
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI
Functionality			
• MPI	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP master	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	Yes	Yes	Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32	32	32
2. Interface			
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	PROFINET
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	Ethernet RJ45
Interface types			
• Number of ports			2
Functionality			
• DP master	Yes	Yes	No
• DP slave	Yes	Yes	No
• PROFINET IO Controller			Yes
• PROFINET IO Device			Yes
• PROFINET CBA			Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.	96	96	
3. Interface			
Interface type		Pluggable interface module (IF), technical data as for 2nd interface	Pluggable interface module (IF)
Plug-in interface modules		IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)	IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
Physics		RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Functionality			
• MPI		No	No
• DP master		Yes	Yes
• DP slave		Yes	Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.		96	96

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 414**Technical specifications (continued)**

Article number	6ES7414-2XL07-0AB0 CPU414-2, MPI/DP, 2 MB	6ES7414-3XM07-0AB0 CPU414-3, 4 MB, 3 INTERFACES	6ES7414-3EM07-0AB0 CPU414-3 PN/DP, 4 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Isochronous mode			
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; Via PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET interface
Communication functions			
PG/OP communication	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data record routing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Global data communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 basic communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S5 compatible communication			
• supported	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5
Standard communication (FMS)			
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB
Open IE communication			
• TCP/IP			Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.			62
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 Adv. and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.			62
• UDP			Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.			62
Web server			
• supported	No	No	Yes
Number of connections			
• overall	64	64	64
Standards, approvals, certificates			
Use in hazardous areas			
• ATEX	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions			
Ambient temperature during operation			
• min.	0 °C	0 °C	0 °C
• max.	60 °C	60 °C	60 °C
Configuration			
Know-how protection			
• User program protection/password protection	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions			
Width	25 mm	50 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	219 mm	219 mm	219 mm
Weights			
Weight, approx.	700 g	900 g	900 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 414

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
CPU 414-2 Work memory 2 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7414-2XL07-0AB0	Slot number labels 1 set (spare part)	6ES7912-0AA00-0AA0
CPU 414-3 Work memory 4 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, module slots for 1 IF module, incl. slot number labels	6ES7414-3XM07-0AB0	SIMATIC Manual Collection Electronic manuals on DVD, multi-language: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0
CPU 414-3 PN/DP Work memory 4 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFINET interface, slot for memory card, module slot for 1 IF module, incl. slot number labels	6ES7414-3EM07-0AB0	SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2
RAM memory card • 64 KB • 256 KB • 1 MB • 2 MB • 4 MB • 8 MB • 16 MB • 64 MB	6ES7952-0AF00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0	PROFIBUS bus components	
FEFROM memory card • 64 KB • 256 KB • 1 MB • 2 MB • 4 MB • 8 MB • 16 MB • 32 MB • 64 MB	6ES7952-0KF00-0AA0 6ES7952-0KH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface • With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
MPI cable for connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; length: 5 m	6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0	RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface • With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0
IF 964-DP interface module For connecting an additional DP line; for CPU 414-3, CPU 414-3 PN/DP, CPU 416-3, CPU 416-3 PN/DP, CPU 417-4	6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect connection system Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units • With PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units	6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0
		RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS	6GK1500-0EA02
		PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for fast mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter; max. delivery unit 1 000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m	6XV1830-0EH10

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 414

1

Ordering data**Article No.****RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS**

Transmission rate up to 12 Mbps;
24 V DC; IP20 enclosure

6ES7972-0AA02-0XA0**PROFINET bus components****IE FC TP standard cable GP 2x2**

4-core, shielded TP installation
cable for connection to
IE FC Outlet RJ45/IE FC RJ45 Plug;
PROFINET-compatible;
with UL approval
Sold by the meter

6XV1840-2AH10**FO standard cable GP (50/125)**

Standard cable, splittable,
UL approval, sold by the meter

6XV1873-2A**SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch**

Industrial Ethernet Switches
with integral SNMP access,
Web diagnostics,
copper cable diagnostics and
PROFINET diagnostics for configur-
ing line, star and ring topologies;
four 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports and
two FO ports

6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3**Article No.****IE FC RJ45 plugs**

RJ45 plug connector for
Industrial Ethernet with a rugged
metal enclosure and integrated
insulation displacement contacts
for connecting Industrial Ethernet
FC installation cables

IE FC RJ45 Plug 180

180° cable outlet

- 1 unit
- 10 units
- 50 units

6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0

PROFIBUS/PROFINET bus components

For establishing MPI/PROFIBUS/
PROFINET communication

See catalogs IK PI, CA 01

Overview

CPU 416-2, CPU 416-3 and CPU 416-3 PN/DP

- High-performance CPUs in the high-end performance range
- Applicable for plants with high requirements in the high-end performance range
- Integrated PROFINET functions in CPU 416-3 PN/DP

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7416-2XP07-0AB0 CPU 416-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3XS07-0AB0 CPU 416-3, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES	6ES7416-3ES07-0AB0 CPU416-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
General information			
Product type designation	CPU 416-2	CPU 416-3	CPU416-3 PN/DP
Engineering with			
• Programming package	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.5 or higher with HSP 262
Supply voltage			
Rated value (DC)			
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power loss			
Power loss, typ.	4.5 W	5.5 W	6.5 W
Memory			
Work memory			
• integrated	8 Mbyte	16 Mbyte	16 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	4 Mbyte	8 Mbyte	8 Mbyte
• integrated (for data)	4 Mbyte	8 Mbyte	8 Mbyte
Load memory			
• expandable FEPRM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	1 Mbyte	1 Mbyte	1 Mbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times			
for bit operations, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for word operations, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	25 ns	25 ns	25 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity			
S7 counter			
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC counter			
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 times			
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC timer			
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data areas and their retentivity			
Flag			
• Number, max.	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 416**Technical specifications (continued)**

Article number	6ES7416-2XP07-0AB0 CPU 416-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3XS07-0AB0 CPU 416-3, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES	6ES7416-3ES07-0AB0 CPU 416-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Address area			
I/O address area			
• Inputs	16 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs	16 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Process image			
• Inputs, adjustable	16 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	16 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Time of day			
Clock			
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Operating hours counter			
• Number	16	16	16
Interfaces			
Interfaces/bus type	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFINET (2 ports), 1 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)
Number of RS 485 interfaces	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	1; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces		1; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)	1; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
1. Interface			
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI
Functionality			
• MPI	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP master	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	Yes	Yes	Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32	32	32
2. Interface			
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	PROFINET
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	Ethernet RJ45
Interface types			
• Number of ports			2
Functionality			
• DP master	Yes	Yes	No
• DP slave	Yes	Yes	No
• PROFINET IO Controller			Yes
• PROFINET IO Device			Yes
• PROFINET CBA			Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.	125	125	
3. Interface			
Interface type		Pluggable interface module (IF), technical data as for 2nd interface	Pluggable interface module (IF)
Plug-in interface modules		IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)	IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
Physics		RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Functionality			
• MPI		No	No
• DP master		Yes	Yes
• DP slave		Yes	Yes
DP master			
• Number of DP slaves, max.		125	125

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7416-2XP07-0AB0 CPU 416-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3XS07-0AB0 CPU 416-3, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES	6ES7416-3ES07-0AB0 CPU416-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Isochronous mode			
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; Via PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET interface
Communication functions			
PG/OP communication	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data record routing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Global data communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 basic communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 communication			
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes
S5 compatible communication			
• supported	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5
Standard communication (FMS)			
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB
Open IE communication			
• TCP/IP			Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs 94
- Number of connections, max.			
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs 94
- Number of connections, max.			
• UDP			Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs 94
- Number of connections, max.			
Web server			
• supported	No	No	Yes
Number of connections			
• overall	96	96	96
Standards, approvals, certificates			
Use in hazardous areas			
• ATEX	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions			
Ambient temperature during operation			
• min.	0 °C	0 °C	0 °C
• max.	60 °C	60 °C	60 °C
Configuration			
Know-how protection			
• User program protection/password protection	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions			
Width	25 mm	50 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	219 mm	219 mm	219 mm
Weights			
Weight, approx.	700 g	900 g	900 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 416

1

Ordering data**Article No.****Article No.****CPU 416-2**

Work memory 8 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels

6ES7416-2XP07-0AB0**CPU 416-3**

Work memory 16 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, module slot for 1 IF module, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels

6ES7416-3XS07-0AB0**CPU 416-3 PN/DP**

Work memory 16 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFINET interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, module slot for 1 IF module, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels

6ES7416-3ES07-0AB0**RAM memory card**

- 64 KB
- 256 KB
- 1 MB
- 2 MB
- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 64 MB

6ES7952-0AF00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AH00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0

FEEPROM memory card

- 64 KB
- 256 KB
- 1 MB
- 2 MB
- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 32 MB
- 64 MB

6ES7952-0KF00-0AA0
6ES7952-0KH00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0

MPI cable

For connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; length: 5 m

6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0**IF 964-DP interface module**

For connecting an additional DP line; for CPU 414-3, CPU 414-3 PN/DP, CPU 416-3, CPU 416-3 PN/DP, CPU 417-4

6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0**Slot number labels**

1 set (spare part)

6ES7912-0AA00-0AA0**SIMATIC Manual Collection**

Electronic manuals on DVD, multi-language: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0**SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year**

Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2**PROFIBUS bus components****RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet**

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0

RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0

RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect connection system

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps

- Without PG interface
 - 1 unit
 - 100 units
- With PG interface
 - 1 unit
 - 100 units

6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0
6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0

6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 416

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS	6GK1500-0EA02	SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports and two FO ports	6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3
PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for fast mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter; max. delivery unit 1 000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m	6XV1830-0EH10	IE FC RJ45 plugs RJ45 plug connector for Industrial Ethernet with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables	
RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS Transmission rate up to 12 Mbps; 24 V DC; IP20 enclosure	6ES7972-0AA02-0XA0	IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 180° cable outlet • 1 unit • 10 units • 50 units	6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0 6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0 6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0
PROFINET bus components		PROFIBUS/PROFINET bus components For establishing MPI/PROFIBUS/PROFINET communication	See catalogs IK PI, CA 01
IE FC TP standard cable GP 2x2 4-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC Outlet RJ45/ IE FC RJ45 Plug; PROFINET-compatible; with UL approval Sold by the meter	6XV1840-2AH10		
FO standard cable GP (50/125) Standard cable, splittable, UL approval, sold by the meter	6XV1873-2A		

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units
Standard CPUs

CPU 417

Overview



CPU 417-4

- The most powerful SIMATIC S7-400 CPU
- Can be used in the most sophisticated installations in the upper performance range
- With two slots for IF modules

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0
	CPU 417-4, 32 MB, 4 INTERFACES
General information	
Product type designation	CPU 417-4
Engineering with	
• Programming package	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power loss	
Power loss, typ.	6.5 W
Memory	
Work memory	
• integrated	32 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	16 Mbyte
• integrated (for data)	16 Mbyte
Load memory	
• expandable FEPRM, max.	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	1 Mbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times	
for bit operations, typ.	7.5 ns
for word operations, typ.	7.5 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	7.5 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	15 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity	
S7 counter	
• Number	2 048
IEC counter	
• present	Yes
S7 times	
• Number	2 048
IEC timer	
• present	Yes
Data areas and their retentivity	
Flag	
• Number, max.	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area

Article number	6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0
	CPU 417-4, 32 MB, 4 INTERFACES
Address area	
I/O address area	
• Inputs	16 kbyte
• Outputs	16 kbyte
Process image	
• Inputs, adjustable	16 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	16 kbyte
Time of day	
Clock	
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes
Operating hours counter	
• Number	16
Interfaces	
Interfaces/bus type	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP, 2 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)
Number of RS 485 interfaces	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces	2; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
1. Interface	
Interface type	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI
Functionality	
• MPI	Yes
• DP master	Yes
• DP slave	Yes
DP master	
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32
2. Interface	
Interface type	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0 CPU 417-4, 32 MB, 4 INTERFACES
Functionality	
• DP master	Yes
• DP slave	Yes
DP master	
• Number of DP slaves, max.	125
3. Interface	
Interface type	Pluggable interface module (IF), technical data as for 2nd interface
Plug-in interface modules	IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Functionality	
• MPI	No
• DP master	Yes
• DP slave	Yes
DP master	
• Number of DP slaves, max.	125
4. Interface	
Interface type	Pluggable interface module (IF), technical data as for 2nd interface
Plug-in interface modules	IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
Isochronous mode	
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	Yes; For PROFIBUS only
Communication functions	
PG/OP communication	Yes
Data record routing	Yes
Global data communication	
• supported	Yes
S7 basic communication	
• supported	Yes
S7 communication	
• supported	Yes

Article number	6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0 CPU 417-4, 32 MB, 4 INTERFACES
S5 compatible communication	
• supported	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5
Standard communication (FMS)	
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB
Open IE communication	
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB
Web server	
• supported	No
Number of connections	
• overall	120
Standards, approvals, certificates	
Use in hazardous areas	
• ATEX	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C
• max.	60 °C
Configuration	
Know-how protection	
• User program protection/password protection	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions	
Width	50 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	219 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	900 g

Ordering data

Article No.

Article No.

CPU 417-4

Work memory 30 MB, power supply 24 V DC, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, module slots for up to 2 additional IF modules, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels

6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0

RAM memory card

- 64 KB
- 256 KB
- 1 MB
- 2 MB
- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 64 MB

6ES7952-0AF00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AH00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0
6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0

FEPROM memory card

- 64 KB
- 256 KB
- 1 MB
- 2 MB
- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 32 MB
- 64 MB

6ES7952-0KF00-0AA0
6ES7952-0KH00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0
6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0

MPI cable

For connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; length: 5 m

6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Standard CPUs

CPU 417

1

Ordering data**Article No.****IF 964-DP interface module**

For connecting an additional DP line; for CPU 414-3, CPU 414-3 PN/DP, CPU 416-3, CPU 416-3 PN/DP, CPU 417-4

6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0**Slot number labels**

1 set (spare part)

6ES7912-0AA00-0AA0**SIMATIC Manual Collection**

Electronic manuals on DVD, multi-language: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0**SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year**

Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2**RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet**

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0

Article No.**RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet**

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0

RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect connection system

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps

- Without PG interface
 - 1 unit
 - 100 units
- With PG interface
 - 1 unit
 - 100 units

6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0
6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0

6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0

RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet

For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS

6GK1500-0EA02**PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable**

Standard type with special design for fast mounting, 2-core, shielded, cut-to-length; max. delivery unit 1 000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m

6XV1830-0EH10

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 standard CPUs

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412**1****Overview**

- The low-cost introduction to the mid performance range
- Can be used in small and medium-sized plants with requirements in the mid performance range

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme-specific information was added.

For further technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1412-2EK06-2AB0
Based on	6ES7412-2EK06-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412-2 PN V6
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• Max.	70 °C; = Tmax; @ 60°C for UL/ATEX/FM use
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412-2 PN**

CPU with main memory 1 MB
(0.5 MB code and 0.5 MB data),
2 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP and PN each

Extended temperature range and
exposure to media

6AG1412-2EK06-2AB0**Accessories****Memory Card RAM**

Exposure to media

- 2 MB

- 32 MB

Extended temperature range and
exposure to media

- 4 MB

- 8 MB

- 16 MB

- 64 MB

6AG1952-1AL00-4AA0**6AG1952-1KT00-4AA0****6AG1952-1AM00-7AA0****6AG1952-1AP00-7AA0****6AG1952-1AS00-7AA0****6AG1952-1AY00-7AA0****Article No.****RS 485 bus connector
with 90° cable outlet**

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range
and exposure to media

- without PG interface

- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA12-2XA0**6AG1972-0BB12-2XA0****RS 485 bus connector
with angled cable outlet**

Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and
exposure to media

- Without PG interface

- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA42-7XA0**6AG1972-0BB42-7XA0****RS 485 bus connector
with axial cable outlet**

For SIPLUS OP, for connection to
PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS

Extended temperature range and
exposure to media

6AG1500-0EA02-2AA0**Further accessories**

see SIMATIC S7-400
CPU 412, page 1/7

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 standard CPUs

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414

1

Overview

- CPUs for high demands in the mid-level performance range
- Applicable for plants with additional demands on programming scope and processing speed
- Integrated PROFINET functions in CPU 414-3 PN/DP

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme-specific information was added.

For further technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1414-3EM07-7AB0
Based on	6ES7414-3EM07-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414-3 PN/DP V7
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	70 °C; = Tmax
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, max.	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414-3 PN/DP**

CPU with main memory 4 MB (2 MB code and 2 MB data), 3 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, PN each and for IF964-DP (plug-in)

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1414-3EM07-7AB0**Accessories****Memory Card RAM**

see SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

IF 964-DP interface module**6AG1964-2AA04-7AB0**

For connecting an additional DP line; for SIPLUS CPU 414-3 PN/DP, CPU 416-3, CPU 416-3 PN/DP, CPU 417-4

RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet

see SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet

see SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet

see SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

Article No.**RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS**

Transfer rate up to 12 Mbit/s; 24 V DC; IP20 enclosure

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1972-0AA02-7XA0**SIPLUS SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch**

with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 ports and two FO ports

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1204-2BB10-4AA3**IE FC RJ45 Plug 180**

180° cable outlet; 1 unit

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1901-1BB10-7AA0**Further accessories**

see SIMATIC S7-400 CPU 414, page 1/11

Overview

High-performance CPUs in the high-end performance range

- Applicable for plants with high requirements in the high-end performance range
- Integrated PROFINET functions in CPU 416-3 PN/DP

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme-specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:

www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1416-3XR05-4AB0	6AG1416-3ES07-7AB0
Based on	6ES7416-3XR05-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU416-3	6ES7416-3ES07-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416-3 PN/DP V7
Ambient conditions		
Ambient temperature in operation		
• Min.	0 °C; = Tmin	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	60 °C; = Tmax	70 °C; = Tmax
Extended ambient conditions		
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity		
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance		
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75 %) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75%) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416-3**

CPU with main memory 11.2 MB (5.6 MB code and 5.6 MB data), 3 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, DP each and module slot for 1 IF module

Exposure to media

Article No.

6AG1416-3XR05-4AB0

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416-3 PN/DP

CPU with main memory 16 MB (8 MB code and 8 MB data), 3 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, PN each and module slot for 1 IF module

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1416-3ES07-7AB0

Article No.**SIPLUS accessories**

see SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414, page 1/22

Further accessories

see SIMATIC S7-400 CPU 416, page 1/16

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 standard CPUs

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 417

1

Overview

The most powerful SIMATIC S7-400 CPU

- Applicable for plants with maximum requirements in the high-end performance range
- With 2 plug-in slots for IF modules

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1417-4XT07-4AB0
Based on	6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU417-4
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	0 °C; = Tmin
• max.	60 °C; = Tmax
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75 %) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS CPU 417-4**

CPU with main memory 32 MB (16 MB code and 16 MB data), 3 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, DP each and 2x for IFM modules (plug-in)

Exposure to media

6AG1417-4XT07-4AB0**Accessories****Memory card RAM**

See SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

FEPRM memory card

Exposure to media

- 32 MB

6AG1952-1KT00-4AA0**Article No.****RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet**

See SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet

See SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet

See SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412, page 1/21

RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS

Transfer rate up to 12 Mbit/s; 24 V DC; IP20 enclosure

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1972-0AA02-7XA0**Further accessories**

See SIMATIC CPU 417, page 1/20

Overview

CPU 416F-2 and CPU 416F-3 PN/DP

- For constructing a fail-safe automation system for plants with increased safety requirements
- High-performance CPU in the top-end performance range
- Complies with safety requirements to SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508 and PL e acc. to ISO 13849.1
- Standard and safety-related tasks can be performed with a single CPU
- Multi-processor mode is possible
- Safety-related communication with distributed I/O devices over PROFIBUS DP with the *PROFIsafe* profile
- Fail-safe I/O modules can be connected decentralized over the integrated interfaces (DP and PN with CPU416F-3 PN/DP) and/or through communication modules (CP443-5 Ext. and CP443-1 Adv.)
- Standard modules for non-safety-related applications can be operated centrally and decentralized

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0
	CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
General information		
Product type designation	CPU 416F-2	CPU416F-3 PN/DP
Engineering with		
• Programming package	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.5 or higher with HSP 262
Supply voltage		
Rated value (DC)		
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power loss		
Power loss, typ.	4.5 W	6.5 W
Memory		
Work memory		
• integrated	8 Mbyte	16 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	4 Mbyte	8 Mbyte
• integrated (for data)	4 Mbyte	8 Mbyte
Load memory		
• expandable FEPRAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	1 Mbyte	1 Mbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times		
for bit operations, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for word operations, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	25 ns	25 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity		
S7 counter		
• Number	2 048	2 048
IEC counter		
• present	Yes	Yes
S7 times		
• Number	2 048	2 048
IEC timer		
• present	Yes	Yes

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0
	CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Data areas and their retentivity		
Flag		
• Number, max.	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area
Address area		
I/O address area		
• Inputs	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Process image		
• Inputs, adjustable	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Time of day		
Clock		
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes	Yes
Operating hours counter		
• Number	16	16
Interfaces		
Interfaces/bus type	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFINET (2 ports), 1 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)
Number of RS 485 interfaces	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	1; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces		1; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
1. Interface		
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS485/PROFIBUS+MPI	RS485/PROFIBUS+MPI
Functionality		
• MPI	Yes	Yes
• DP master	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	Yes	Yes
• PROFIBUS DP master	Yes	Yes
• PROFIBUS DP slave	Yes	Yes
DP master		
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32	32

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Fail-safe CPUs

CPU 416F**Technical specifications (continued)**

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0 CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0 CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
2. Interface		
Interface type	Integrated	PROFINET
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	Ethernet RJ45
Interface types		
• Number of ports		2
Functionality		
• DP master	Yes	No
• DP slave	Yes	No
• PROFINET IO Controller		Yes
• PROFINET IO Device		Yes
• PROFINET CBA		Yes
• PROFIBUS DP master	Yes	No
• PROFIBUS DP slave	Yes	No
DP master		
• Number of DP slaves, max.	125	
3. Interface		
Interface type		Pluggable interface module (IF)
Plug-in interface modules		IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
Physics		RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Functionality		
• MPI		No
• DP master		Yes
• DP slave		Yes
• PROFIBUS DP master		Yes
• PROFIBUS DP slave		Yes
DP master		
• Number of DP slaves, max.		125
Isochronous mode		
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; Via PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET interface
Communication functions		
PG/OP communication	Yes	Yes
Data record routing	Yes	Yes
Global data communication		
• supported	Yes	Yes
S7 basic communication		
• supported	Yes	Yes
S7 communication		
• supported	Yes	Yes
S5 compatible communication		
• supported	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5
Standard communication (FMS)		
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0 CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0 CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Open IE communication		
• TCP/IP		Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.		94
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.		94
• UDP		Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.		94
Web server		
• supported	No	Yes
• Web server	No	Yes
Number of connections		
• overall	96	96
Standards, approvals, certificates		
Use in hazardous areas		
• ATEX	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions		
Ambient temperature during operation		
• min.	0 °C	0 °C
• max.	60 °C	60 °C
Configuration		
Know-how protection		
• User program protection/ password protection	Yes	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions		
Width	25 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	219 mm	219 mm
Weights		
Weight, approx.	700 g	900 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Fail-safe CPUs

CPU 416F

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
CPU 416F-2 For configuring safety-related automation systems; 8 MB work memory, 24 V DC power supply, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0		FEPRM memory card • 64 KB • 256 KB • 1 MB • 2 MB • 4 MB • 8 MB • 16 MB • 32 MB • 64 MB
CPU 416F-3 PN/DP For configuring safety-related automation systems; work memory 16 MB, 24 V DC power supply, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFINET interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, receptacle for 1 IF module, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0		6ES7952-0KF00-0AA0 6ES7952-0KH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0
S7 Distributed Safety programming tool V5.4 Task: Engineering tool for configuring failsafe user programs for SIMATIC S7-300F, S7-400F, WinAC RTX F, ET 200SP, ET 200S, ET 200M, ET 200iSP, ET 200pro, ET 200eco Requirement: STEP 7 V5.3 SP3 or higher • Floating License • Floating License for 1 user, license key download without software or documentation ¹⁾ ; e-mail address required for delivery	6ES7833-1FC02-0YA5 6ES7833-1FC02-0YH5		MPI cable For connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; length: 5 m IF 964-DP interface module For connecting an additional DP line
S7 Distributed Safety upgrade From V5.x to V5.4; Floating License for 1 user	6ES7833-1FC02-0YE5		6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0 Slot number labels 1 set (spare part)
RAM memory card • 64 KB • 256 KB • 1 MB • 2 MB • 4 MB • 8 MB • 16 MB • 64 MB	6ES7952-0AF00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0		SIMATIC Manual Collection Electronic manuals on DVD, multi-language: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC
			SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates
			PROFIBUS bus components
			RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface • With PG interface
			6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
			RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface • With PG interface
			6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0
			RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect system Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units • With PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units
			6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0
			RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS
			6GK1500-0EA02

¹⁾ For up-to-date information and download availability, see:
www.siemens.com/tia-online-software-delivery

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Fail-safe CPUs

CPU 416F

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for fast mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter; max. delivery unit 1 000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m	6XV1830-0EH10	SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports and two FO ports	6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3
RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS Transmission rate up to 12 Mbps; 24 V DC; IP20 enclosure	6ES7972-0AA02-0XA0	IE FC RJ45 plugs RJ45 plug connector for Industrial Ethernet with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables	
PROFINET bus components IE FC TP standard cable GP 2x2 4-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC Outlet RJ45/IE FC RJ45 Plug; PROFINET-compatible; with UL approval Sold by the meter	6XV1840-2AH10	IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 180° cable outlet • 1 unit • 10 units • 50 units	6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0 6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0 6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0
FO standard cable GP (50/125) Standard cable, splittable, UL approval, sold by the meter	6XV1873-2A	PROFIBUS/PROFINET bus components For establishing MPI/PROFIBUS/PROFINET communication	See catalog IK PI

Overview

CPU 416F-2 and CPU 416F-3 PN/DP

- For constructing a fail-safe automation system for plants with increased safety requirements
- High-performance CPU in the top-end performance range
- Complies with safety requirements to SIL 3 acc. to IEC 61508 and PL e acc. to ISO 13849.1
- Standard and safety-related tasks can be performed with a single CPU
- Multi-processor mode is possible
- Safety-related communication with distributed I/O devices over PROFIBUS DP with the *PROFIsafe* profile
- Fail-safe I/O modules can be connected decentralized over the integrated interfaces (DP and PN with CPU416F-3 PN/DP) and/or through communication modules (CP443-5 Ext. and CP443-1 Adv.)
- Standard modules for non-safety-related applications can be operated centrally and decentralized

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0
	CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
General information		
Product type designation	CPU 416F-2	CPU416F-3 PN/DP
Engineering with		
• Programming package	STEP 7 V5.4 or higher with HSP 261	STEP 7 V5.5 or higher with HSP 262
Supply voltage		
Rated value (DC)		
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power loss		
Power loss, typ.	4.5 W	6.5 W
Memory		
Work memory		
• integrated	8 Mbyte	16 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	4 Mbyte	8 Mbyte
• integrated (for data)	4 Mbyte	8 Mbyte
Load memory		
• expandable FEPRAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	1 Mbyte	1 Mbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times		
for bit operations, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for word operations, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	12.5 ns	12.5 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	25 ns	25 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity		
S7 counter		
• Number	2 048	2 048
IEC counter		
• present	Yes	Yes
S7 times		
• Number	2 048	2 048
IEC timer		
• present	Yes	Yes

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0
	CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Data areas and their retentivity		
Flag		
• Number, max.	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area	16 kbyte; Size of bit memory address area
Address area		
I/O address area		
• Inputs	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Process image		
• Inputs, adjustable	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Time of day		
Clock		
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes	Yes
Operating hours counter		
• Number	16	16
Interfaces		
Interfaces/bus type	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFIBUS DP	1 x MPI/PROFIBUS DP, 1 x PROFINET (2 ports), 1 x PROFIBUS DP (optionally pluggable)
Number of RS 485 interfaces	2; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP and PROFIBUS DP	1; Combined MPI / PROFIBUS DP
Number of other interfaces		1; PROFIBUS DP with IF 964-DP (plug-in option; MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
1. Interface		
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS485/PROFIBUS+MPI	RS485/PROFIBUS+MPI
Functionality		
• MPI	Yes	Yes
• DP master	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	Yes	Yes
• PROFIBUS DP master	Yes	Yes
• PROFIBUS DP slave	Yes	Yes
DP master		
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32	32

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Fail-safe CPUs

CPU 416F

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0 CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0 CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
2. Interface		
Interface type	Integrated	PROFINET
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	Ethernet RJ45
Interface types		
• Number of ports		2
Functionality		
• DP master	Yes	No
• DP slave	Yes	No
• PROFINET IO Controller		Yes
• PROFINET IO Device		Yes
• PROFINET CBA		Yes
• PROFIBUS DP master	Yes	No
• PROFIBUS DP slave	Yes	No
DP master		
• Number of DP slaves, max.	125	
3. Interface		
Interface type		Pluggable interface module (IF)
Plug-in interface modules		IF 964-DP (MLFB: 6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0)
Physics		RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Functionality		
• MPI		No
• DP master		Yes
• DP slave		Yes
• PROFIBUS DP master		Yes
• PROFIBUS DP slave		Yes
DP master		
• Number of DP slaves, max.		125
Isochronous mode		
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	Yes; For PROFIBUS only	Yes; Via PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET interface
Communication functions		
PG/OP communication	Yes	Yes
Data record routing	Yes	Yes
Global data communication		
• supported	Yes	Yes
S7 basic communication		
• supported	Yes	Yes
S7 communication		
• supported	Yes	Yes
S5 compatible communication		
• supported	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5	Yes; Via FC AG_SEND and AG_RECV, max. via 10 CP 443-1 or 443-5
Standard communication (FMS)		
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB

Article number	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0 CPU 416F-2, MPI, PROFIBUS, 8 MB	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0 CPU416F-3 PN/DP, 16 MB, 3 INTERFACES
Open IE communication		
• TCP/IP		Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.		94
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Via CP 443-1 and loadable FB	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.		94
• UDP		Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.		94
Web server		
• supported	No	Yes
• Web server	No	Yes
Number of connections		
• overall	96	96
Standards, approvals, certificates		
Use in hazardous areas		
• ATEX	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc	ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC T4 Gc
Ambient conditions		
Ambient temperature during operation		
• min.	0 °C	0 °C
• max.	60 °C	60 °C
Configuration		
Know-how protection		
• User program protection/ password protection	Yes	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions		
Width	25 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	219 mm	219 mm
Weights		
Weight, approx.	700 g	900 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Fail-safe CPUs

CPU 416F

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
CPU 416F-2 For configuring safety-related automation systems; 8 MB work memory, 24 V DC power supply, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7416-2FP07-0AB0		
CPU 416F-3 PN/DP For configuring safety-related automation systems; work memory 16 MB, 24 V DC power supply, MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface, PROFINET interface, PROFIBUS DP master interface, receptacle for 1 IF module, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0		
S7 Distributed Safety programming tool V5.4 Task: Engineering tool for configuring failsafe user programs for SIMATIC S7-300F, S7-400F, WinAC RTX F, ET 200SP, ET 200S, ET 200M, ET 200iSP, ET 200pro, ET 200eco Requirement: STEP 7 V5.3 SP3 or higher • Floating License • Floating License for 1 user, license key download without software or documentation ¹⁾ ; e-mail address required for delivery	6ES7833-1FC02-0YA5 6ES7833-1FC02-0YH5		
S7 Distributed Safety upgrade From V5.x to V5.4; Floating License for 1 user	6ES7833-1FC02-0YE5		
RAM memory card • 64 KB • 256 KB • 1 MB • 2 MB • 4 MB • 8 MB • 16 MB • 64 MB	6ES7952-0AF00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0	FEPRM memory card • 64 KB • 256 KB • 1 MB • 2 MB • 4 MB • 8 MB • 16 MB • 32 MB • 64 MB	6ES7952-0KF00-0AA0 6ES7952-0KH00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0
		MPI cable For connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; length: 5 m	6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0
		IF 964-DP interface module For connecting an additional DP line	6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0
		Slot number labels 1 set (spare part)	6ES7912-0AA00-0AA0
		SIMATIC Manual Collection Electronic manuals on DVD, multi-language: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0
		SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2
		PROFIBUS bus components	
		RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface • With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
		RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface • With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0
		RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect system Max. transfer rate 12 Mbps • Without PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units • With PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units	6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0
		RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS	6GK1500-0EA02

¹⁾ For up-to-date information and download availability, see:
www.siemens.com/tia-online-software-delivery

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Fail-safe CPUs

CPU 416F

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for fast mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter; max. delivery unit 1 000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m	6XV1830-0EH10	SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports and two FO ports	6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3
RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS Transmission rate up to 12 Mbps; 24 V DC; IP20 enclosure	6ES7972-0AA02-0XA0	IE FC RJ45 plugs RJ45 plug connector for Industrial Ethernet with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables	
PROFINET bus components IE FC TP standard cable GP 2x2 4-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC Outlet RJ45/IE FC RJ45 Plug; PROFINET-compatible; with UL approval Sold by the meter	6XV1840-2AH10	IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 180° cable outlet • 1 unit • 10 units • 50 units	6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0 6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0 6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0
FO standard cable GP (50/125) Standard cable, splittable, UL approval, sold by the meter	6XV1873-2A	PROFIBUS/PROFINET bus components For establishing MPI/PROFIBUS/PROFINET communication	See catalog IK PI

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

CPU 412-5H, CPU 414-5H, CPU 416-5H, CPU 417-5H

1

Overview

- CPU for SIMATIC S7-400H and S7-400F/FH
- Can be used in S7-400H high-availability systems
- Can be used with F runtime license as F-capable CPU in S7-400F/FH safety-related systems
- With integrated PROFIBUS DP master and combined MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface
- With integrated PROFINET interface (2-port switch)
- Features 2 slots for sync modules

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7412-5HK06-0AB0 CPU412-5H PN/DP, 1MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7414-5HM06-0AB0 CPU414-5H PN/DP, 4MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7416-5HS06-0AB0 CPU416-5H PN/DP, 16MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7417-5HT06-0AB0 CPU417-5H PN/DP, 32MB F. S7-400H/F/FH
Product type designation				
General information				
Engineering with				
• Programming package	As of STEP 7 V5.5 SP2 with HF1	As of STEP 7 V5.5 SP2 with HF1	As of STEP 7 V5.5 SP2 with HF1	As of STEP 7 V5.5 SP2 with HF1
Supply voltage				
Rated value (DC)				
• 24 V DC	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply	No; Power supply via system power supply
Power losses				
Power loss, typ.	7.5 W	7.5 W	7.5 W	7.5 W
Memory				
Work memory				
• Integrated	1 Mbyte	4 Mbyte	16 Mbyte	32 Mbyte
• integrated (for program)	512 kbyte	2 Mbyte	6 Mbyte	16 Mbyte
• integrated (for data)	512 kbyte	2 Mbyte	10 Mbyte	16 Mbyte
Load memory				
• expandable FEPRM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
• integrated RAM, max.	512 kbyte	512 kbyte	1 Mbyte	1 Mbyte
• expandable RAM, max.	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte	64 Mbyte
CPU processing times				
for bit operations, typ.	31.25 ns	18.75 ns	12.5 ns	7.5 ns
for word operations, typ.	31.25 ns	18.75 ns	12.5 ns	7.5 ns
for fixed point arithmetic, typ.	31.25 ns	18.75 ns	12.5 ns	7.5 ns
for floating point arithmetic, typ.	62.5 ns	37.5 ns	25 ns	15 ns
Counters, timers and their retentivity				
S7 counter				
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC counter				
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 times				
• Number	2 048	2 048	2 048	2 048
IEC timer				
• present	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data areas and their retentivity				
Flag				
• Number, max.	8 192 byte	8 192 byte	16 384 byte	16 384 byte

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

CPU 412-5H, CPU 414-5H, CPU 416-5H, CPU 417-5H

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7412-5HK06-0AB0 CPU412-5H PN/DP, 1MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7414-5HM06-0AB0 CPU414-5H PN/DP, 4MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7416-5HS06-0AB0 CPU416-5H PN/DP, 16MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7417-5HT06-0AB0 CPU417-5H PN/DP, 32MB F. S7-400H/F/FH
Address area				
I/O address area				
• Inputs	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Process image				
• Inputs, adjustable	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
• Outputs, adjustable	8 kbyte	8 kbyte	16 kbyte	16 kbyte
Hardware configuration				
Slots				
• Required slots	2	2	2	2
Time of day				
Clock				
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Operating hours counter				
• Number	16	16	16	16
Interfaces				
Number of RS 485 interfaces	2	2	2	2
Number of other interfaces	2; Fiber-optic interface	2; Fiber-optic interface	2; Fiber-optic interface	2; Fiber-optic interface
1st interface				
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI	RS 485 / PROFIBUS + MPI
Functionality				
• MPI	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP master	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	No	No	No	No
DP master				
• Number of DP slaves, max.	32	32	32	32
2nd interface				
Interface type	PROFINET	PROFINET	PROFINET	PROFINET
Physics	Ethernet RJ45	Ethernet RJ45	Ethernet RJ45	Ethernet RJ45
Number of ports	2	2	2	2
Functionality				
• DP master	No	No	No	No
• DP slave	No	No	No	No
• PROFINET IO Controller	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• PROFINET IO Device	No	No	No	No
• PROFINET CBA	No	No	No	No
PROFINET IO Controller				
• Max. number of connectable IO devices for RT	256	256	256	256
3rd interface				
Interface type	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated	Integrated
Physics	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS	RS 485 / PROFIBUS
Functionality				
• DP master	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• DP slave	No	No	No	No
DP master				
• Number of DP slaves, max.	64	96	125	125
4th interface				
Interface type	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)
Plug-in interface modules	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

CPU 412-5H, CPU 414-5H, CPU 416-5H, CPU 417-5H

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7412-5HK06-0AB0 CPU412-5H PN/DP, 1MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7414-5HM06-0AB0 CPU414-5H PN/DP, 4MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7416-5HS06-0AB0 CPU416-5H PN/DP, 16MB F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7417-5HT06-0AB0 CPU417-5H PN/DP, 32MB F. S7-400H/F/FH
5. Interface				
Interface type	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)	Pluggable synchronization submodule (FO)
Plug-in interface modules	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0	Synchronization modules 6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 or 6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0
Isochronous mode				
Isochronous operation (application synchronized up to terminal)	No	No	No	No
Communication functions				
PG/OP communication	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data record routing	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
S7 routing	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Global data communication				
• supported	No	No	No	No
S7 basic communication				
• supported	No	No	No	No
S7 communication				
• supported	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
S5-compatible communication				
• supported	Yes; (via CP max. 10 and FC AG_SEND and FC AG_RECV)	Yes; (via CP max. 10 and FC AG_SEND and FC AG_RECV)	Yes; (via CP max. 10 and FC AG_SEND and FC AG_RECV)	Yes; (via CP max. 10 and FC AG_SEND and FC AG_RECV)
Standard communication (FMS)				
• supported	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB	Yes; Via CP and loadable FB
Open IE communication				
• TCP/IP	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.	46	62	94	118
• ISO-on-TCP (RFC1006)	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs	Yes; Via integrated PROFINET interface or CP 443-1 and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.	46	62	94	118
• UDP	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs	Yes; via integrated PROFINET interface and loadable FBs
- Number of connections, max.	46	62	94	118
Web server				
• supported	No	No	No	No
Number of connections				
• overall	48	64	96	120
Configuration				
Programming				
Programming language				
- LAD	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
- FBD	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
- STL	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
- SCL	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
- CFC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
- GRAPH	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
- HiGraph®	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Know-how protection				
• User program protection/password protection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Block encryption	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy	Yes; With S7 block Privacy
Dimensions				
Width	50 mm	50 mm	50 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	219 mm	219 mm	219 mm	219 mm
Weights				
Weight, approx.	995 g	995 g	995 g	995 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

CPU 412-5H, CPU 414-5H, CPU 416-5H, CPU 417-5H

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
CPU 412-5H For S7-400H and S7-400F/FH; 1 MB RAM, 1 combined MPI/ PROFIBUS DP master interface, 1 PROFIBUS DP interface, 2 PROFINET interfaces (switches), 2 slots for sync modules, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7412-5HK06-0AB0		
CPU 412-5H system bundle Not assembled, consisting of: UR2-H rack, 2 x PS 405/407 power supply units, 2 x CPU 412-5H, 4 x sync modules (for max. 10 m), 2 x fiber optic cables for sync modules (1 m), 4 x backup batteries; two additional memory cards required (to be ordered separately) • CPU 412-5H system bundle, 120/230 V AC, 10 A • CPU 412-5H system bundle, 24/48/60 V DC, 10 A	6ES7400-0HR01-4AB0 6ES7400-0HR51-4AB0		
CPU 414-5H For S7-400H and S7-400F/FH; 4 MB RAM, 1 combined MPI/ PROFIBUS DP master interface, 1 PROFIBUS DP interface, 2 PROFINET interfaces (switches), 2 slots for sync modules, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7414-5HM06-0AB0		
CPU 414-5H system bundle Not assembled, consisting of: UR2-H rack, 2 x PS 405/407 power supply units, 2 x CPU 414-5H, 4 x sync modules (for max. 10 m), 2 x fiber optic cables for sync mod- ules (1 m), 4 x backup batteries; additional two memory cards required (to be ordered separately) • CPU 414-5H system bundle, 120/230 V AC, 10 A • CPU 414-5H system bundle, 24/48/60 V DC, 10 A	6ES7400-0HR02-4AB0 6ES7400-0HR52-4AB0		
CPU 416-5H For S7-400H and S7-400F/FH; 16 MB RAM, 1 combined MPI/ PROFIBUS DP master interface, 1 PROFIBUS DP interface, 2 PROFINET interfaces (switches), 2 slots for sync modules, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7416-5HS06-0AB0		
CPU 416-5H system bundle Not assembled, consisting of: UR2-H rack, 2 x PS 405/407 power supply units, 2 x CPU 416-5H, 4 x sync modules (for max. 10 m), 2 x fiber optic cables for sync mod- ules (1 m), 4 x backup batteries; two additional memory cards required (to be ordered separately) • CPU 416-5H system bundle, 120/230 V AC, 10 A • CPU 416-5H system bundle, 24/48/60 V DC, 10 A	6ES7400-0HR03-4AB0 6ES7400-0HR53-4AB0		
CPU 417-5H For S7-400H and S7-400F/FH; 32 MB RAM, 1 combined MPI/ PROFIBUS DP master interface, 1 PROFIBUS DP interface, 2 PROFINET interfaces (switches), 2 slots for sync modules, slot for memory card, incl. slot number labels	6ES7417-5HT06-0AB0		
CPU 417-5H system bundle Not assembled, consisting of: UR2-H rack, 2 x PS 405/407 power supply units, 2 x CPU 417-5H, 4 x sync modules (for max. 10 m), 2 x fiber optic cables for sync mod- ules (1 m), 4 x backup batteries; two additional memory cards required (to be ordered separately) • CPU 417-5H system bundle, 120/230 V AC, 10 A • CPU 417-5H system bundle, 24/48/60 V DC, 10 A	6ES7400-0HR04-4AB0 6ES7400-0HR54-4AB0		
Memory card RAM 1 MB 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB 16 MB 64 MB			6ES7952-1AK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1AY00-0AA0
FEPROM memory card 1 MB 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB 16 MB 32 MB 64 MB			6ES7952-1KK00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KL00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KM00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KP00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KS00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KT00-0AA0 6ES7952-1KY00-0AA0
MPI cable For connection of SIMATIC S7 and PG via MPI; 5 m in length			6ES7901-0BF00-0AA0
Slot number plates 1 set (spare part)			6ES7912-0AA00-0AA0
S7 F Systems RT License For processing safety-related user programs, for one S7-400H-based system each with CPU 412-5H, CPU 414-5H, CPU 416-5H or CPU 417-5H			6ES7833-1CC00-6YX0
S7 F Systems V6.1 Programming and configuring envi- ronment for creating and operating safety-related STEP 7 programs for an S7-400H-based target system, floating license for 1 user, runs with Windows XP Prof SP2, Windows XP Prof SP2/SP3, Windows Server 2003 SP2 2 languages (English, German) Type of delivery: Certificate of License as well as software and electronic documenta- tion on CD			6ES7833-1CC02-0YA5

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

CPU 412-5H, CPU 414-5H, CPU 416-5H, CPU 417-5H

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
S7 F systems upgrade from V5.x/V6.0 to V6.1 2 languages (English, German), floating license for 1 user Type of delivery: Certificate of License as well as software and electronic documentation on CD	6ES7833-1CC02-0YE5	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s • Without PG interface • With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
SIMATIC Manual Collection Electronic manuals on DVD, multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC-based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0	RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet • Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s - Without PG interface - With PG interface • Max. transfer rate 1.5 Mbit/s - Without PG interface	6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA30-0XA0
SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2	Bus connector RS 485 with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect connection technology Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s • Without PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units • With PG interface - 1 unit - 100 units	6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0
		RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet For SIMATIC OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS	6GK1500-0EA02
		PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for quick mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter, max. delivery unit 1000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m	6XV1830-0EH10

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

1

Sync-module for coupling the CPU 41xH**Overview**

- For coupling the two CPU 41xH in the S7-400H subunits.
- Can be plugged direct into the CPU

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 S7 SYNC-MOD. V6 F. S7-400H/F/FH	6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0 S7 SYNC-MOD. V6 F. S7-400H/F/FH
Product type designation		
Input current		
from CPU, max.	220 mA	240 mA
Power losses		
Power loss, typ.	0.77 W	0.83 W
Dimensions		
Width	13 mm	13 mm
Height	14 mm	14 mm
Depth	58 mm	58 mm
Weights		
Weight, approx.	14 g	14 g

Ordering data**Article No.****Article No.****Sync module**

For coupling the CPU 41xH for S7-400H/F/FH; 2 modules required per CPU

- For patch cable, can be used with fiber-optic cables up to 10 m
- For patch and installation cables, can be used with fiber-optic cables up to 10 km

6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0**6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0****Fiber-optic connecting cable**

For sync module
6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0

- 1 m
- 2 m
- 10 m

For Sync module
6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0;
fiber-optic monomode LC/LC
duplex crossed 9/125 μ
(max. 10 km)

6ES7960-1AA04-5AA0**6ES7960-1AA04-5BA0****6ES7960-1AA04-5KA0**

On request

Overview

- Transceiver for the transition from a redundant PROFIBUS DP master system to a single-channel PROFIBUS DP master system
- To connect devices with a single PROFIBUS DP interface to the redundant PROFIBUS DP master system of the SIMATIC S7-400H

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7153-2BA70-0XB0
	ET200M, INTERFACE IM153-2 HF OUTDOOR
General information	
Vendor identification (VendorID)	801Eh
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 24 V DC	Yes
permissible range (ripple included), lower limit (DC)	20.4 V
permissible range (ripple included), upper limit (DC)	28.8 V
external protection for power supply lines (recommendation)	2,5 A
Mains buffering	
• Mains/voltage failure stored energy time	5 ms
Input current	
Current consumption, max.	650 mA
Inrush current, typ.	3 A
I ² t	0.1 A ² ·s
Output current	
for backplane bus (5 V DC), max.	1.5 A
Power loss	
Power loss, typ.	5.5 W
Address area	
Addressing volume	
• Inputs	244 byte
• Outputs	244 byte
Hardware configuration	
Number of modules per DP slave interface, max.	12
Time stamping	
Accuracy	1 ms; 1ms at up to 8 modules; 10ms at up to 12 modules
Number of message buffers	15

Article number	6ES7153-2BA70-0XB0
	ET200M, INTERFACE IM153-2 HF OUTDOOR
Messages per message buffer	20
Number of stampable digital inputs, max.	128; Max. 128 signals/station; max. 32 signals/slot
Time format	RFC 1119
Time resolution	0.466 ns
Time interval for transmitting the message buffer if a message is present	1 000 ms
Time stamp on signal change	rising / falling edge as signal entering or exiting
Interfaces	
Interface physics, RS 485	Yes
Interface physics, FOC	No
PROFIBUS DP	
• Node addresses	1 to 125 permitted
• automatic detection of transmission rate	Yes
• Output current, max.	70 mA
• Transmission rate, max.	12 Mbit/s
• Transmission procedure	RS 485
• SYNC capability	Yes
• FREEZE capability	Yes
• Direct data exchange (slave-to-slave communication)	Yes; as publisher with all IO, as subscriber with F-IO only
• Connector type	9-pin sub D
1. Interface	
DP slave	
• GSD file	SI05801E.GSG
• automatic baud rate search	Yes
Protocols	
Bus protocol/transmission protocol	PROFIBUS DP to EN 50170
Isolation	
Isolation tested with	Isolation voltage 500 V
Degree and class of protection	
Degree of protection acc. to EN 60529	
• IP20	Yes

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

High-availability CPUs

Y-link for S7-400H

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7153-2BA70-0XB0 ET200M, INTERFACE IM153-2 HF OUTDOOR
Air pressure acc. to IEC 60068-2-13	
• Operating altitude above sea level, max.	3 000 m
Configuration	
Configuration software	
• STEP 7	Yes; STEP 7 / COM PROFIBUS / non-Siemens tools via GSD file
Dimensions	
Width	40 mm
Height	125 mm
Depth	117 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	360 g
Article number	6ES7197-1LB00-0XA0 Y-COUPLER F. BUILDING Y-LINK, REDUNDANT
General information	
Requirements for DP master system	
• Length of parameter assignment telegram	244 byte
Supply voltage	
Description	via bus module
permissible range, lower limit (DC)	20.4 V
permissible range, upper limit (DC)	28.8 V
Interfaces	
PROFIBUS DP	
Properties of the lower-level DP master system	
- Transmission rate, max.	12 Mbit/s; 45.45 kbit/s to 12 Mbit/s
- Termination of lower-level DP master system	Active terminating resistor (Bus Terminator)
- Use of OLM/OBT	Yes
- Use of RS 485 repeaters, max.	9
- Number of DP slaves, max.	31; 64 when using RS 485 repeaters or OLM/OBT
Protocols	
PROFIBUS DP	Yes
Interrupts/diagnostics/status information	
Status indicator	No
Alarms	No
Diagnostic functions	Yes
Potential separation	
to lower-level DP master system	Yes
Dimensions	
Width	40 mm
Height	125 mm
Depth	130 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	200 g

Ordering data**Article No.**

For use with STEP 7 from V5.4 or SIMATIC PCS 7 from V7.0

Y link

For connecting devices with only one PROFIBUS DP interface to a redundant S7-400H, comprising:

- 2 IM 153-2 High Feature Outdoor interface modules (6ES7153-2BA70-0XA0)
- 1 Y coupler (6ES7197-1LB00-0XA0)
- 1 BM IM/IM bus module (6ES7195-7HD80-0XA0)
- 1 BM Y-coupler bus module (6ES7654-7HY00-0XA0)

6ES7197-1LA12-0XA0**Accessories****Mounting rail**

For assembling the Y link with active bus modules

- Length 483 mm
- Length 530 mm

6ES7195-1GA00-0XA0
6ES7195-1GF30-0XA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 high-availability CPUs

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412H

1

Overview



- CPU for SIMATIC S7-400H and S7-400F/FH
- Usable in high-availability systems such as the S7-400H
- Usable with F runtime license as F-capable CPU in S7-400F/FH safety-related systems
- Features a combined MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface
- Features 2 slots for sync modules

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1412-5HK06-7AB0
Based on	6ES7412-5HK06-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412-5H
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	70 °C
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m). For "F-Systems" applications max. +2000 m above sea level permissible
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75 %) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 412-5H

CPU for S7-400H with 1 MB RAM (0.5 MB code and 0.5 MB data); 5 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, DP, PN each and 2 slots for sync modules

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1412-5HK06-7AB0

Accessories

Memory card RAM

(media exposure)

- 2 MB

6AG1952-1AL00-4AA0

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 64 MB

6AG1952-1AM00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AP00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AS00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AY00-7AA0

FEPRAM memory card

Exposure to media

32 MB

6AG1952-1KT00-4AA0

RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA12-2XA0
6AG1972-0BB12-2XA0

RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet

Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA42-7XA0
6AG1972-0BB42-7XA0

RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet

For SIPLUS OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1500-0EA02-2AA0

RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS

Transfer rate up to 12 Mbit/s; 24 V DC; IP20 enclosure

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1972-0AA02-7XA0

Additional accessories

See SIMATIC CPU 412-5H, page 1/37

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 high-availability CPUs

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414H

1

Overview

CPU for SIMATIC S7-400H and S7-400F/FH

- Usable in high-availability systems such as the S7-400H
- Usable with F runtime license as F-capable CPU in S7-400F/FH safety-related systems
- With integral PROFIBUS DP master interface
- Features 2 slots for sync modules

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1414-5HM06-7AB0
Based on	6ES7414-5HM06-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414-5H
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C
• max.	70 °C; For "F-Systems" applications max. +60 °C permissible
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m). For "F-Systems" applications max. +2000 m above sea level permissible
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75 %) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 414-5H**

CPU for S7-400H with 4 MB RAM (2 MB code and 2 MB data);
5 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, DP, PN each and 2 slots for sync modules

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1414-5HM06-7AB0**Accessories****Memory Card RAM**

Exposure to media

- 2 MB

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 64 MB

6AG1952-1AL00-4AA0

6AG1952-1AM00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AP00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AS00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AY00-7AA0

FEPRM memory card

Exposure to media

- 32 MB

6AG1952-1KT00-4AA0**RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet**

Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA12-2XA0
6AG1972-0BB12-2XA0

Article No.**RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet**

Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA42-7XA0
6AG1972-0BB42-7XA0

RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet

For SIPLUS OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1500-0EA02-2AA0**RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS**

Transfer rate up to 12 Mbit/s;
24 V DC; IP20 enclosure

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1972-0AA02-7XA0**Additional accessories**

see SIMATIC S7-400
CPU 414-5H, page 1/37

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 high-availability CPUs

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416H

1

Overview

- CPU for SIMATIC S7-400H and S7-400F/H
- Usable in high-availability systems such as the S7-400H
- Usable with F runtime license as F-capable CPU in S7-400F/H safety-related systems
- With integrated PROFIBUS DP master and combined MPI/PROFIBUS DP master interface
- With integrated PROFINET interface (2-port switch)
- Features 2 slots for sync modules

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1416-5HS06-7AB0
Based on	6ES7416-5HS06-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416-5H
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	70 °C; For "F-Systems" applications max. +60 °C permissible
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m). For "F-Systems" applications max. +2000 m above sea level permissible
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416-5H****6AG1416-5HS06-7AB0**

(medial exposure)

CPU for S7-400H with 16 MB RAM (6 MB code and 10 MB data);
5 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, DP, PN each and 2 slots for sync modules

Accessories**Memory card RAM**

Exposure to media

- 2 MB

6AG1952-1AL00-4AA0

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 64 MB

6AG1952-1AM00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AP00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AS00-7AA0
6AG1952-1AY00-7AA0

FEPRM memory card

Exposure to media

- 32 MB

6AG1952-1KT00-4AA0**RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet**

Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA12-2XA0
6AG1972-0BB12-2XA0

RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet

Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6AG1972-0BA42-7XA0
6AG1972-0BB42-7XA0

RS 485 bus connector with axial cable outlet

For SIPLUS OP, for connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1500-0EA02-2AA0**RS 485 repeater for PROFIBUS**

Transfer rate up to 12 Mbit/s;
24 V DC; IP20 enclosure

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1972-0AA02-7XA0**Additional accessories**

see SIMATIC S7-400 CPU 416-5H, page 1/37

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 high-availability CPUs

1

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 417H**Overview**

CPU for SIMATIC S7-400H and S7-400F/FH

- Usable in high-availability systems such as the S7-400H
- Usable with F runtime license as F-capable CPU in S7-400F/FH safety-related systems
- With integral PROFIBUS DP master interface
- Features 2 slots for sync modules

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1417-5HT06-7AB0
Based on	6ES7417-5HT06-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 417-5H
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C
• max.	70 °C; For "F-Systems" applications max. +60 °C permissible
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m). For "F-Systems" applications max. +2000 m above sea level permissible
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.**

SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 417-5H	
CPU for S7-400H with 32 MB RAM (16 MB code and 16 MB data); 5 interfaces: 1x MPI/DP, DP, PN each and 2 slots for sync modules	
Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1417-5HT06-7AB0
SIPLUS accessories	see SIPLUS S7-400 CPU 416H, page 1/45
Additional accessories	see SIMATIC S7-400 CPU 417-5H, page 1/37

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 high-availability CPUs

SIPLUS sync module for connecting the CPU 41xH

1

Overview

- For linking the two CPUs 414-4H/417-4H in the subunits of the S7-400H
- Can be plugged directly into the CPU

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1960-1AA06-7XA0	6AG1960-1AB06-7XA0
Based on	6ES7960-1AA06-0XA0 SIPLUS S7-400H IF960-H 10M	6ES7960-1AB06-0XA0 SIPLUS S7-400H IF960-H 10KM
Ambient conditions		
Ambient temperature in operation		
• Min.	-25 °C	-25 °C
• max.	70 °C	70 °C
Extended ambient conditions		
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity		
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance		
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75 %) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75 %) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data

	Article No.		Article No.
SIPLUS sync module V6	6AG1960-1AA06-7XA0 6AG1960-1AB06-7XA0	SIPLUS S7-400 FO CABLE	6AG1960-1AA04-7AA0 6AG1960-1AA04-7BA0 6AG1960-1AA04-7KA0
		1 m long	
Extended temperature range and exposure to media		2 m long	
• for patch cable, can be used with fiber-optic cables up to 10 m		10 m long	
• for patch and installation cables, can be used with fiber-optic cables up to 10 km			

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS high-availability CPUs

SIPLUS Y-Link for S7-400H

Overview



- Bus coupler for transition from a redundant PROFIBUS DP master system to a single-channel PROFIBUS DP master system
- For connection of devices with only one PROFIBUS DP interface to the redundant PROFIBUS DP master system of the SIMATIC S7-400H

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

Technical documentation on SIPLUS can be found here:

www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1153-2BA10-7XB0
Based on	6ES7153-2BA10-0XB0 SIPLUS ET200M IM153-2 HF
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	-40 °C; = Tmin; Startup @ -25 °C
• max.	70 °C; = Tmax
Ambient temperature during storage/transportation	
• min.	-40 °C
• max.	70 °C
Extended ambient conditions	
• relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
• At cold restart, min.	-25 °C
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75%) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Article number	6AG1197-1LB00-4XA0
Based on	6ES7197-1LB00-0XA0 SIPLUS S7 Y COUPLER
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	0 °C; = Tmin
• max.	60 °C; = Tmax
Ambient temperature during storage/transportation	
• min.	-40 °C
• max.	70 °C
Extended ambient conditions	
• relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75%) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controllerCentral processing units
SIPLUS high-availability CPUs**SIPLUS Y-Link for S7-400H**

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6AG1195-7HD10-2XA0
Based on	6ES7195-7HD10-0XA0 SIPLUS ET200M DP BUS MODULE
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature during operation	
• min.	-40 °C; = Tmin
• max.	70 °C; = Tmax; 60 °C @ UL/cUL, ATEX and FM use
Ambient temperature during storage/transportation	
• min.	-40 °C
• max.	70 °C
Extended ambient conditions	
• relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75%) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS ET 200M IM 153-2
High Feature (2 units required)**

Slave interface for connecting an ET 200M to PROFIBUS DP for a maximum of 12 S7-300 modules; also for use in redundant systems

- Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1153-2BA10-7XB0**Y coupler**

For establishing a Y-link for redundant controllers

- Exposure to media

6AG1197-1LB00-4XA0**Bus module for SIPLUS ET 200M**

Bus module for accommodating two IM-153 modules for the hot-swapping function; for setting up redundant systems

- Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1195-7HD10-2XA0**SIPLUS S7 bus module
BM Y-coupler**

to accommodate a Y-coupler incl. bus module cover

- Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1654-7HY00-7XA0**Accessories***Consumables***Mounting rail**

For assembling the Y-link with active bus modules

- Length 483 mm
- Length 530 mm

**6ES7195-1GA00-0XA0
6ES7195-1GF30-0XA0**

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

Interface modules

PROFIBUS module IF-964 DP

1

Overview

- To connect distributed I/Os over PROFIBUS DP
- Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s
- Electrically isolated RS 485 interface
- Connection via 9-pin sub-D connector
- The following connection options are available for each S7-400 CPU:
 - A PROFIBUS module in the CPUs 414-3, 414(F)-3 PN/DP, 416-3, 416(F)-3 PN/DP
 - Two PROFIBUS modules in the CPU 417-4

Note:

Can only be used with CPUs 6ES7414-3XM07-0AB0, 6ES7414-3EM07-0AB0, 6ES7414-3FM07-0AB0, 6ES7416-3XS07-0AB0, 6ES7416-3ES07-0AB0, 6ES7416-3FS07-0AB0 and 6ES7417-4XT07-0AB0.

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0 INTERFACE MOD. DP-MASTER F. S7-400
Product type designation	
Input current from CPU, max.	150 mA; Current consumption from S7-400 bus: The module uses no current at 24 V, it provides this voltage only at the DP interface. Total current consumption of the components connected to the DP interface, but maximum 150 mA. Current carrying capacity of the isolated 5 V (P5ext) maximum 90 mA, current carrying capacity of the 24 V maximum 150 mA.
Power losses	
Power loss, typ.	1 W
Interfaces	
PROFIBUS DP	
Cable length - Cable length, max.	1 200 m; At 9.6 kbit/s: max. 1200 m; at 12 Mbit/s: max. 100 m
1st interface	
Physics	RS 485
Isolated	Yes
Functionality	
• DP master	Yes; Default setting
• DP slave	Yes
DP master	
• Transmission rate, min.	9.6 kbit/s
• Transmission rate, max.	12 Mbit/s
• Number of DP slaves, max.	125; depending on the CPU used
Services	
- PG/OP communication	Yes
- Equidistance mode support	Yes
- SYNC/FREEZE	Yes
- Direct data exchange (slave-to-slave communication)	Yes
Address area	
- Inputs, max.	device-dependent
- Outputs, max.	device-dependent
User data per DP slave	
- Inputs, max.	244 byte
- Outputs, max.	244 byte
Communication functions	
Number of connections • overall	device-dependent
Dimensions	
Width	26 mm
Height	54 mm
Depth	130 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	65 g

Ordering data**Article No.**

IF 964-DP interface module
Interface module with integrated PROFIBUS DP master interface

6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Central processing units

SIPLUS S7-400 interface modules

SIPLUS S7-400 interface modules

1

Overview

- To connect distributed I/O via PROFIBUS DP
- Max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s
- Electrically isolated RS 485 interface
- Connection via 9-pin Sub-D socket
- One or two PROFIBUS modules can be plugged in for each S7-400 CPU:
 - CPU 414-3/416-3: 1 module
 - CPU 417-4: 2 modules

Notes:

Can only be used with the CPUs 6AG1416-3XR05-4AB0, 6AG1416-3ER05-4AB0 and 6AG1417-4XT05-4AB0.

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme-specific information was added.

For further technical documentation on SIPLUS, see: www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1964-2AA04-7AB0
Based on	6ES7964-2AA04-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 IF964-DP
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	70 °C; = Tmax
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, max.	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS interface module IF-964 DP**

Interface module with integrated PROFIBUS DP master interface

Extended temperature range and exposure to media

6AG1964-2AA04-7AB0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Digital modules

SM 421 digital input module

Overview



- Digital inputs for the SIMATIC S7-400
- For connecting standard switches and two-wire proximity switches (BERO)

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7421-7BH01-0AB0	6ES7421-1BL01-0AA0	6ES7421-1EL00-0AA0	6ES7421-1FH20-0AA0	6ES7421-7DH00-0AB0
	SM421, 16DI, DC24V, 0.05MS INPUT DELAY	SM421, 32DI, DC24V	SM421, 32DI, DC/AC 120V	SM421, 16DE, UC120/230V	SM421, 16DE, UC24-60V
Product type designation					
Supply voltage					
Load voltage L+					
• Rated value (DC)	24 V				
• permissible range, lower limit (DC)	20.4 V				
• permissible range, upper limit (DC)	28.8 V				
Input current					
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	130 mA	20 mA	200 mA	80 mA	150 mA
from supply voltage L+, max.	120 mA				
Power losses					
Power loss, max.	5 W	6 W	16 W	12 W	8 W; 3.5 W (24 V DC); 6.5 W (48 V DC); 8.0 W (60 V DC)
Digital inputs					
Number of digital inputs	16	32	32	16	16
Number of simultaneously controllable inputs					
all mounting positions					
- up to 40 °C, max.	16	32	32	16	16
- up to 60 °C, max.	16	32	32	16	16
Input voltage					
• Type of input voltage	DC	DC	AC/DC	AC/DC	AC/DC
• Rated value (DC)	24 V	24 V			
• Rated value (UC)			120 V	230 V; 120/230 V UC	24 V; 24 to 60 V UC
• for signal "0"	-30 V DC to +5 V DC	-30 V DC to +5 V DC	0 to 20 V UC	0 to 40 V AC/ -40 to +40 V DC	-6 to +6 V DC/ 0 to 5 V AC
• for signal "1"	11 V DC to 30 V DC	13 V DC to 30 V DC	79 to 132 V AC; 80 to 132 V DC	74 to 264 V AC; 80 to 264 V DC, -80 to -264 V	15 to 72 V DC; -15 to -72 V DC; 15 to 60 V AC
• Frequency range			47 ... 63 Hz	47 ... 63 Hz	47 to 63 Hz AC / DC

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Digital modules

SM 421 digital input module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7421-7BH01-0AB0 SM421, 16DI, DC24V, 0.05MS INPUT DELAY	6ES7421-1BL01-0AA0 SM421, 32DI, DC24V	6ES7421-1EL00-0AA0 SM421, 32DI, DC/AC 120V	6ES7421-1FH20-0AA0 SM421, 16DE, UC120/230V	6ES7421-7DH00-0AB0 SM421, 16DE, UC24-60V
Input current • for signal "0", max. (permissible quiescent current) • for signal "1", typ.	6 mA; 6 ... 8 mA	1.3 mA 7 mA	1 mA 2 mA; 2 ... 5 mA	6 mA; AC: 6 mA; DC: 2 mA 10 mA; at 120 V: 10 mA AC, 1.8 mA DC; at 230 V: 14 mA AC, 2 mA DC	4 mA; 4 ... 10 mA
Input delay (for rated value of input voltage) for standard inputs - Parameterizable - nominal	Yes				Yes 0.5 ms; 0.5 / 3 / 10 / 20 ms
Cable length • shielded, max. • Unshielded, max.	1 000 m; 1000 m/3 ms; 70 m/0.5 ms; 30 m/0.1 ms; 30 m/0.05 ms 600 m; 600 m: 3 ms; 50 m: 0.5 ms; 20 m: 0.1 ms; 20 m: 0.05 ms	1 000 m 600 m	1 000 m 600 m	1 000 m 600 m	1 000 m 600 m; 600 m: 3, 10, 20 ms; 100 m: 0.5 ms
Encoder Connectable encoders • 2-wire sensor - Permissible quiescent current (2-wire sensor), max.	Yes 3 mA	Yes 1.5 mA	Yes 1 mA	Yes 5 mA; AC: 5 mA	Yes 0.5 mA; 0.5 to 2 mA
Interrupts/diagnostics/ status information Alarms • Diagnostic alarm • Hardware interrupt	Yes; Parameterizable Yes; Parameterizable				Yes; Parameterizable Yes; Parameterizable
Diagnostic messages • Diagnostics	Yes; internal/ external fault				Yes; internal/ external fault
Galvanic isolation Galvanic isolation digital inputs • between the channels, in groups of • between the channels and the backplane bus	8 Yes	32 Yes	8 Yes	4 Yes	1 Yes
Isolation Isolation checked with	500 V DC	500 V DC	1500 V AC	1500 V AC	1500 V AC
Dimensions Width Height Depth	25 mm 290 mm 210 mm	25 mm 290 mm 210 mm	25 mm 290 mm 210 mm	25 mm 290 mm 210 mm	25 mm 290 mm 210 mm
Weights Weight, approx.	600 g	500 g	600 g	650 g	600 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Digital modules

SM 421 digital input module**Ordering data****Article No.****Article No.****SM 421 digital input modules**16 inputs, 24 V DC,
with process/diagnostics interrupt**6ES7421-7BH01-0AB0**

32 inputs, 24 V DC

6ES7421-1BL01-0AA0

32 inputs, 120 V AC/DC

6ES7421-1EL00-0AA016 inputs, 120/230 V AC/DC, inputs
according to IEC 1131-2 Type 2**6ES7421-1FH20-0AA0**16 inputs, 24 to 60 V AC/DC,
with process/diagnostics interrupt**6ES7421-7DH00-0AB0****Front connector**

48-pin

- with screw contacts, 1 unit
- with screw contacts, 84 units
- with spring-loaded terminals,
1 unit
- with crimp contacts, 1 unit
- with crimp contacts, 84 units

6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0**6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0****6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0****6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0****6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0****Cover film for labeling strips****6ES7492-2XX00-0AA0**

Spare part

**Labeling sheets for machine
inscription**DIN A4, for printing using laser
printer; pack of 10

petrol

6ES7492-2AX00-0AA0

light-beige

6ES7492-2BX00-0AA0

yellow

6ES7492-2CX00-0AA0

red

6ES7492-2DX00-0AA0**SIMATIC Manual Collection****6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0**Electronic manuals on DVD,
multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN,
SIMATIC bus components,
SIMATIC C7,
SIMATIC distributed I/O,
SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors,
SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC Based
Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7,
SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7,
SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC**SIMATIC Manual Collection
update service for 1 year****6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2**Current "Manual Collection" DVD
and the three subsequent updates

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Digital modules

SM 422 digital output module

1

Overview



- Digital outputs for the SIMATIC S7-400
- For connecting solenoid valves, contactors, low-power motors, lamps and motor starters

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7422-1FH00-0AA0	6ES7422-1HH00-0AA0	6ES7422-1BH11-0AA0	6ES7422-1BL00-0AA0	6ES7422-7BL00-0AB0
	SM422, 16DO, AC 120/230V, 2A	SM422, 16DO, AC5-230V, 5A RELAY	SM422, 16DO, DC24V, 2A	SM422, 32DO, DC24V, 0,5A	SM422, 32DO, DC24V, 0,5A
Product type designation					
Supply voltage					
Load voltage L+					
• Rated value (DC)		60 V	24 V	24 V	24 V
• permissible range, lower limit (DC)		1 V	20.4 V	20.4 V	20.4 V
• permissible range, upper limit (DC)		60 V	28.8 V	28.8 V	28.8 V
Load voltage L1					
• Rated value (AC)	230 V; 120/230V AC	230 V			
• permissible range, lower limit (AC)	79 V	2 V			20.4 V
• permissible range, upper limit (AC)	264 V	264 V			28.8 V
Input current					
from load voltage L+ (without load), max.	1.5 mA		30 mA	30 mA	120 mA
from load voltage L1 (without load), max.	6 mA				
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	400 mA	1 A	160 mA	200 mA	200 mA
Power losses					
Power loss, max.	16 W	25 W	7 W	4 W	8 W
Digital outputs					
Number of digital outputs	16	16; Relays	16	32	32
Limitation of inductive shutdown voltage to			-30 V	-27 V	L+ (-45 V)
Switching capacity of the outputs					
• on lamp load, max.	50 W	60 W	10 W	5 W	5 W
Output voltage					
• for signal *I*, min.	L1 (-18.1 V)		L+ (-0.5 V)	L+ (-0.3 V)	L+ (-0.8 V)

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Digital modules

SM 422 digital output module

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7422-1FH00-0AA0 SM422, 16DO, AC120/230V, 2A	6ES7422-1HH00-0AA0 SM422, 16DO, AC5-230V, 5A RELAY	6ES7422-1BH11-0AA0 SM422, 16DO, DC24V, 2A	6ES7422-1BL00-0AA0 SM422, 32DO, DC24V, 0,5A	6ES7422-7BL00-0AB0 SM422, 32DO, DC24V, 0,5A
Output current					
• for signal "1" rated value	2 A	5 A	2 A	0.5 A	0.5 A
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, min.	10 mA		5 mA	5 mA	5 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, max.			2.4 A	0.6 A	0.6 A
• for signal "0" residual current, max.	2.6 mA		0.5 mA	0.3 mA	0.5 mA
Switching frequency					
• with resistive load, max.	10 Hz	10 Hz	100 Hz	100 Hz	100 Hz
• with inductive load, max.	0.5 Hz		0.1 Hz	0.5 Hz	2 Hz
Aggregate current of outputs (per group)					
all mounting positions					
- up to 60 °C, max.	2 A; 5 A with fan subassembly; per 4 adjacent outputs	5 mA; 10 A with fan subassembly	2 A; 2 adjacent outputs each	2 A; 8 adjacent outputs each	2 A
Relay outputs					
• Number of operating cycles, max.		100 000; 100 000 (AC 15 / DC 13); 3 000 000 mechanical			
Switching capacity of contacts					
- with inductive load, max.		5 A; 5 A (30 V DC); 5 A (230 V AC)			
- with resistive load, max.		5 A; 5 A (30 V DC); 5 A (230 V AC); 1.2 A (60 V DC); 0.2 A (125 V DC)			
Cable length					
• shielded, max.	1 000 m	1 000 m	1 000 m	1 000 m	1 000 m
• Unshielded, max.	600 m	600 m	600 m	600 m	600 m
Interrupts/diagnostics/ status information					
Alarms					
• Diagnostic alarm					Yes; Parameterizable
Diagnostic messages					
• Diagnostics					Yes; internal/ external fault
Galvanic isolation					
Galvanic isolation digital outputs					
• between the channels, in groups of	4	2	8	32	8
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Isolation					
Isolation checked with	1500 V AC	1500 V AC	500 V DC	500 V DC	500 V DC
Dimensions					
Width	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	210 mm	210 mm	210 mm	210 mm	210 mm
Weights					
Weight, approx.	800 g	700 g	600 g	600 g	600 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Digital modules

SM 422 digital output module

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
SM 422 digital output modules		Labeling sheets for machine inscription	
16 outputs, 24 V DC; 2 A	6ES7422-1BH11-0AA0	DIN A4, for printing using laser printer; pack of 10	
32 outputs, 24 V DC; 0.5 A	6ES7422-1BL00-0AA0	petrol	6ES7492-2AX00-0AA0
32 outputs, 24 V DC, 0.5 A; with diagnostics	6ES7422-7BL00-0AB0	light-beige	6ES7492-2BX00-0AA0
16 outputs, 120/230 V AC; 2 A	6ES7422-1FH00-0AA0	yellow	6ES7492-2CX00-0AA0
16 outputs, relay contacts	6ES7422-1HH00-0AA0	red	6ES7492-2DX00-0AA0
Front connector		SIMATIC Manual Collection	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0
48-pin		Electronic manuals on DVD, multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC Based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC	
• with screw contacts, 1 unit	6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0		
• with screw contacts, 84 units	6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0		
• with spring-loaded terminals, 1 unit	6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0		
• with crimp contacts, 1 unit	6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0		
• with crimp contacts, 84 units	6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0		
Cover film for labeling strips	6ES7492-2XX00-0AA0	SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2
Spare part		Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller**SIPLUS S7-400 digital modules****SIPLUS S7-400 SM 421 digital input modules**

1

Overview

- Digital inputs for SIMATIC S7-400
- For connection of switches and 2-wire proximity switches (BEROs)

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1421-1BL01-2AA0
Based on	6ES7421-1BL01-0AA0 SIPLUS S7-400 SM421 32DE
Product type designation	
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	20 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	6 W
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	32
Number of simultaneously control- lable inputs	
all mounting positions	
- up to 40 °C, max.	32
- up to 60 °C, max.	32
Input voltage	
• Type of input voltage	DC
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "0"	-30 V DC to +5 V DC
• for signal "1"	13 V DC to 30 V DC
Input current	
• for signal "0", max. (permissible quiescent current)	1.3 mA
• for signal "1", typ.	7 mA
Cable length	
• shielded, max.	1 000 m
• Unshielded, max.	600 m
Encoder	
Connectable encoders	
• 2-wire sensor	Yes
- Permissible quiescent current (2-wire sensor), max.	1.5 mA
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• between the channels, in groups of	32
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes
Isolation	
Isolation checked with	500 V DC
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	500 g

Ordering data**Article No.**

SIPLUS S7-400 SM 421 digital input module	
32 inputs, 24 V DC	
Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1421-1BL01-2AA0
Accessories	See SIMATIC S7-400 digital input modules, page 1/52

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 digital modules

SIPLUS S7-400 SM 422 digital output modules

1

Overview



- Digital outputs for SIMATIC S7-400
- For connecting solenoid valves, contactors, small-power motors, lamps and motor starters

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1422-1BL00-2AA0
Based on	6ES7422-1BL00-0AA0 SIPLUS S7-400 SM422 32DA
Product type designation	
Digital outputs	
Number of digital outputs	32
Limitation of inductive shutdown voltage to	-27 V
Output voltage	
• for signal "1", min.	L+ (-0.3 V)
Output current	
• for signal "1" rated value	0.5 A
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, min.	5 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, max.	0.6 A
Aggregate current of outputs (per group)	
all mounting positions	
- up to 60 °C, max.	2 A; 8 adjacent outputs each
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital outputs	
• between the channels, in groups of	32
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	600 g

Ordering data

Article No.

SIPLUS S7-400 SM 422 digital output module	
32 outputs, 24 V DC	
Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1422-1BL00-2AA0
Accessories	See SIMATIC S7-400 digital output modules, page 1/55

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module

Overview



- Analog inputs for the SIMATIC S7-400
- For connection of voltage and current sensors, thermocouples, resistors and resistance thermometers
- Resolution from 13 to 16 bit

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7431-0HH00-0AB0 SM431, 16AE, +/-10V, +/-20mA, 4-20mA	6ES7431-1KF20-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT, 0,416MS ZYKL	6ES7431-1KF00-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 13BIT	6ES7431-1KF10-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT
Product type designation				
Supply voltage				
Load voltage L+				
• Rated value (DC)	24 V; Only required for supplying 2-wire transmitters	24 V; Only required for supplying 2-wire transmitters	not necessary	24 V; Only required for supplying 2-wire transmitters
• Reverse polarity protection	Yes	Yes		Yes
Input current				
from load voltage L+ (without load), max.	400 mA; for 16 connected, fully controlled 2-wire transmitters	200 mA; for 8 connected, fully controlled 2-wire transmitters		200 mA; for 8 connected, fully controlled 2-wire transmitters
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	100 mA	1 000 mA	350 mA	600 mA
Power losses				
Power loss, typ.	2 W	4.9 W	1.8 W	3.5 W
Hardware configuration				
Slots				
• Required slots	1	1	1	1
Analog inputs				
Number of analog inputs	16	8	8	8
• For voltage/current measurement	16	8	8	8
• For resistance measurement		4	4	4
permissible input voltage for voltage input (destruction limit), max.	20 V; 20 V DC permanent, 75 V DC for max. 1 s (duty factor 1:20)	18 V; 18 V continuous, 75 V for 1 ms (mark to space ratio 1:20)	50 V	18 V; 18 V continuous, 75 V for 1 ms (mark to space ratio 1:20)
permissible input current for current input (destruction limit), max.	40 mA	40 mA; Permanent	50 mA; 40 mA continuous	40 mA; Permanent
Input ranges (rated values), voltages				
• 1 V to 5 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• -1 V to +1 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• -10 V to +10 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• -2.5 V to +2.5 V				Yes
• -250 mV to +250 mV				Yes
• -5 V to +5 V				Yes
• -500 mV to +500 mV				Yes
• -80 mV to +80 mV				Yes

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7431-0HH00-0AB0 SM431, 16AE, +/-10V, +/-20mA, 4-20mA	6ES7431-1KF20-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT, 0,416MS ZYKL	6ES7431-1KF00-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 13BIT	6ES7431-1KF10-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT
Input ranges (rated values), currents				
• 0 to 20 mA				Yes
• -20 mA to +20 mA	Yes	Yes	Yes	
• 4 mA to 20 mA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Input ranges (rated values), thermoelements				
• Type B				Yes
• Type E				Yes
• Type J				Yes
• Type K				Yes
• Type L				Yes
• Type N				Yes
• Type R				Yes
• Type S				Yes
• Type T				Yes
• Type U				Yes
Input ranges (rated values), resistance thermometer				
• Ni 100				Yes
• Ni 1000				Yes
• Pt 100				Yes
• Pt 1000				Yes
• Pt 10000				Yes
• Pt 200				Yes
• Pt 500				Yes
Input ranges (rated values), resistors				
• 0 to 150 ohms				Yes
• 0 to 300 ohms				Yes
• 0 to 48 ohms				Yes
• 0 to 600 ohms		Yes	Yes	Yes
• 0 to 6000 ohms				Yes; Usable up to 5000 ohms
Thermocouple (TC)				
Temperature compensation				
- internal temperature compensation				No
- external temperature compensation with compensations socket				Yes
- external temperature compensation with Pt100				Yes
- dynamic reference temperature value				Yes
Characteristic linearization				
• Parameterizable				Yes
- for thermocouples				Type B, E, J, K, L, N, R, S, T, U
- for resistance thermometer				Pt100, Pt200, Pt500, Pt1000, Ni100, Ni1000
Cable length				
• shielded, max.	200 m	200 m	200 m	200 m; 50 m with thermocouples and input ranges <= 80 mV

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7431-0HH00-0AB0 SM431, 16AE, +/-10V, +/-20mA, 4-20mA	6ES7431-1KF20-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT, 0,416MS ZYKL	6ES7431-1KF00-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 13BIT	6ES7431-1KF10-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT
Analog value creation				
Integration and conversion time/ resolution per channel				
• Resolution with overrange (bit including sign), max.	13 bit	14 bit; 14 / 14 / 14	13 bit	14 bit; with activated filtering: 16 bits
• Integration time, parameterizable	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Basic conversion time (ms)	55 / 65 ms	52 µs	23 / 25 ms	20.1 / 23.5 ms
• Integration time (ms)	50 / 60 ms		16,7 / 20 ms	16,7 / 20 ms
• Basic conversion time, including integration time (ms)				
- additional conversion time for wire break monitoring				4,3 ms
- additional conversion time for resistance measurement				40.2 / 47 ms
- additional conversion time for wire break monitoring and resistance measurement				5,5 ms
• Interference voltage suppression for interference frequency f1 in Hz	50 / 60 Hz	none / 400 / 60 / 50 Hz	50 / 60 Hz	50 / 60 Hz
Encoder				
Connection of signal encoders				
• for current measurement as 2-wire transducer		Yes	Yes; with external transmitter supply	Yes
• for current measurement as 4-wire transducer	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• for resistance measurement with two-wire connection		Yes; Line resistances are also measured	Yes; Line resistances are also measured	Yes; Line resistances are also measured
• for resistance measurement with three-wire connection		Yes; Line resistances are also measured	Yes; Line resistances are also measured	Yes
• for resistance measurement with four-wire connection		Yes	Yes	Yes
Errors/accuracies				
Operational limit in overall temperature range				
• Voltage, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.65 %; 1.0 % at 1 to 5 V; 0.65 % at +/-1 V, +/-10 V	0.7 %; +/-0.7 % at +/-1 V; +/-0.9 % at +/-10 V, 1 to 5 V	1 %; +/-1.0 % at +/-1 V; +/-0.6 % at +/-10 V; +/-0.7 % at 1 to 5 V	0.38 %; +/-0.38 % at +/-80 mV; +/-0.35 % at +/-250 mV, +/-500mV, +/-1 V, +/-2.5 V, +/-5 V, 1 to 5 V, +/-10 V
• Current, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.65 %	0.8 %; at +/-20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	1 %; at +/-20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	0.35 %; +/-20 mA, 0 to 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA
• Resistance, relative to input area, (+/-)		1 %	1.25 %; 0 to 500 ohms (4-conductor measurement, in range of 600 ohms)	0.5 %
• Resistance thermometer, relative to input area, (+/-)				0.5 %
Basic error limit (operational limit at 25 °C)				
• Voltage, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.25 %; 0.5 % at 1 to 5 V; 0.25 % at +/-1 V, +/-10 V	0.6 %; 0.6 % at +/-1 V; 0.75 % at +/-10 V, 1 to 5 V	0.7 %; 0.7 % at +/-1 V; 0.4 % at +/-10 V; 0.5 % at 1 to 5 V	0.15 %; +/-0.15 % (+/-250 mV, +/-500 mV, +/-1 V, +/-2.5 V, +/-5 V, 1 to 5 V, +/- 10 V); +/-0.17 % (+/- 80 mV);
• Current, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.25 %; at +/-20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	0.7 %; at +/-20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	0.7 %; at +/-20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	0.15 %; +/-20 mA, 0 to 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7431-0HH00-0AB0 SM431, 16AE, +/-10V, +/-20mA, 4-20mA	6ES7431-1KF20-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT, 0,416MS ZYKL	6ES7431-1KF00-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 13BIT	6ES7431-1KF10-0AB0 SM431, 8AE, U/I/R, 14BIT
Resistance, relative to input area, (+/-)		0.7 %; 0 to 600 ohms	0.8 %; 0 to 500 ohms (4-conductor measurement, in range of 600 ohms)	0.15 %; +/-0.15 % at 0 to 48 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 150 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 300 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 600 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 5000 ohms (4-conductor measurement, in range of 6000 ohms); +/-0.3 % at 0 to 300 ohms (3-conductor measurement), 0 to 600 ohms (3-conductor measurement), 0 to 5000 ohms (3-conductor measurement, in range of 6000 ohms) 0.3 %
Resistance thermometer, relative to input area, (+/-)				
Galvanic isolation				
Galvanic isolation analog inputs				
- Galvanic isolation analog inputs - between the channels	No No	Yes; internal / external No	Yes; internal / external No	Yes; internal / external No
Permissible potential difference				
between the inputs (UCM)	2 V DC / 2 Vpp AC	8 V AC	30 V AC	120 V AC
Isolation				
Isolation checked with	500 V DC between bus and local ground	2120 V DC between bus and analog part; 500 V DC between bus and local ground; 707 V DC between analog part and L+/M; 2120 V DC between analog part and local ground; 2120 V DC between L+/M and local ground	2120 V DC between bus and analog part; 500 V DC between bus and local ground; 2120 V DC between analog part and local ground	2120 V DC between bus and L+/M; 2120 V DC between bus and analog part; 500 V DC between bus and local ground; 707 V DC between analog part and L+/M; 2120 V DC between analog part and local ground; 2120 V DC between L+/M and local ground
Dimensions				
Width	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	210 mm	210 mm	210 mm	210 mm
Weights				
Weight, approx.	500 g	500 g	500 g	500 g
Article number	6ES7431-7QH00-0AB0 SM 431, 16AE, U/I/R/PT100, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF00-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, U/I/THERMO, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF10-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, RESIST/PT100, 16BIT	
Product type designation				
Supply voltage				
Load voltage L+				
Rated value (DC)	24 V; Only required for supplying 2-wire transmitters			
Reverse polarity protection	Yes			
Input current				
from load voltage L+ (without load), max.	400 mA; for 16 connected, fully controlled 2-wire transmitters	400 mA	400 mA	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	700 mA	1 200 mA	650 mA	
Power losses				
Power loss, typ.	4.5 W	4.6 W	3.3 W	
Hardware configuration				
Slots				
Required slots	1	1	1	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7431-7QH00-0AB0 SM 431, 16AE, U/I/R/PT100, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF00-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, U/I/THERMO, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF10-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, RESIST./PT100, 16BIT
Analog inputs			
Number of analog inputs	16	8	8
• For voltage/current measurement	16	8	
• For resistance measurement	8		8
permissible input voltage for voltage input (destruction limit), max.	18 V; 18 V continuous, 75 V for 1 ms (mark to space ratio 1:20)	35 V; 35 V continuous, 75 V for max. 1 s (mark to space ratio 1:20)	35 V; 35 V continuous, 75 V for max. 1 s (mark to space ratio 1:20)
permissible input current for current input (destruction limit), max.	40 mA	32 mA	
Input ranges (rated values), voltages			
• 1 V to 5 V	Yes	Yes	
• -1 V to +1 V	Yes	Yes	
• -10 V to +10 V	Yes	Yes	
• -100 mV to +100 mV		Yes	
• -2.5 V to +2.5 V	Yes	Yes	
• -20 mV to +20 mV		Yes	
• -25 mV to +25 mV	Yes		
• -250 mV to +250 mV	Yes	Yes	
• -5 V to +5 V	Yes	Yes	
• -50 mV to +50 mV	Yes	Yes	
• -500 mV to +500 mV	Yes	Yes	
• -80 mV to +80 mV	Yes	Yes	
Input ranges (rated values), currents			
• 0 to 20 mA	Yes	Yes	
• -10 mA to +10 mA	Yes	Yes	
• -20 mA to +20 mA	Yes	Yes	
• -3.2 mA to +3.2 mA		Yes	
• 4 mA to 20 mA	Yes	Yes	
• -5 mA to +5 mA	Yes	Yes	
Input ranges (rated values), thermoelements			
• Type B	Yes	Yes	
• Type E	Yes	Yes	
• Type J	Yes	Yes	
• Type K	Yes	Yes	
• Type L	Yes	Yes	
• Type N	Yes	Yes	
• Type R	Yes	Yes	
• Type S	Yes	Yes	
• Type T	Yes	Yes	
• Type U	Yes	Yes	
Input ranges (rated values), resistance thermometer			
• Ni 100	Yes		Yes
• Ni 1000	Yes		Yes; Different characteristics selectable: Europe/U.S.
• Pt 100	Yes		Yes
• Pt 1000	Yes		Yes
• Pt 200	Yes		Yes
• Pt 500	Yes		Yes

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7431-7QH00-0AB0 SM 431, 16AE, U/I/R/PT100, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF00-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, U/I/THERMO, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF10-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, RESIST/PT100, 16BIT
Input ranges (rated values), resistors			
• 0 to 150 ohms	Yes		
• 0 to 300 ohms	Yes		
• 0 to 48 ohms	Yes		
• 0 to 600 ohms	Yes		
• 0 to 6000 ohms	Yes; Usable up to 5000 ohms		
Thermocouple (TC)			
Temperature compensation			
- internal temperature compensation		Yes	
- external temperature compensation with compensations socket	Yes	Yes	
- external temperature compensation with Pt100	Yes		
- dynamic reference temperature value	Yes	Yes	
Characteristic linearization			
• Parameterizable	Yes	Yes	Yes
- for thermocouples	Type B, E, J, K, L, N, R, S, T, U	Type B, E, J, K, L, N, R, S, T, U	
- for resistance thermometer	Pt100, Pt200, Pt500, Pt1000, Ni100, Ni1000		Pt100, Pt200, Pt500, Pt1000, Ni100, Ni1000; different characteristics selectable (Europe/U.S.)
Cable length			
• shielded, max.	200 m; 50 m with thermocouples and input ranges ≤ 80 mV	200 m	200 m; 50 m with thermocouples and input ranges ±80 mV
Analog value creation			
Integration and conversion time/resolution per channel			
• Resolution with overrange (bit including sign), max.	16 bit; 16 / 16 / 16	16 bit	16 bit
• Integration time, parameterizable	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Basic conversion time (ms)	6 / 20,1 / 23,5 ms	10 / 16,7 / 20 / 100	8 / 23 / 25 ms
• Integration time (ms)	2,5 / 16,7 / 20 ms	2,5 / 16,7 / 20 / 100	20 ms at 50 Hz (entire module incl. wire break)
• Basic conversion time, including integration time (ms)			
- additional conversion time for wire break monitoring	4.3 / 4.3 / 4.3 ms		110 ms / 4 ms
- additional conversion time for resistance measurement	12 / 40,2 / 47 ms		
- additional conversion time for wire break monitoring and resistance measurement	5,5 ms	1 ms (module)	none
• Interference voltage suppression for interference frequency f1 in Hz	400 / 60 / 50 Hz		none/ 60 / 50 Hz
Encoder			
Connection of signal encoders			
• for current measurement as 2-wire transducer	Yes		
• for current measurement as 4-wire transducer	Yes	Yes	
• for resistance measurement with two-wire connection	Yes; Line resistances are also measured		
• for resistance measurement with three-wire connection	Yes		Yes
• for resistance measurement with four-wire connection	Yes	Yes	Yes

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module**Technical specifications (continued)**

Article number	6ES7431-7QH00-0AB0 SM 431, 16AE, U/I/R/PT100, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF00-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, U/I/THERMO, 16BIT	6ES7431-7KF10-0AB0 SM 431, 8AI, RESIST/PT100, 16BIT
Errors/accuracies			
Operational limit in overall temperature range			
• Voltage, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.3 %; +/-0.3 % at +/-250 mV, +/-500 mV, +/-1 V, +/-2.5 V, +/-5 V, 1 to 5 V, +/- 10 V; +/-0.31 % at +/-80 mV; +/-0.32 % at +/-50 mV; +/-0.35 % at +/-25 mV;	0.3 %	
• Current, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.3 %; at 0 to 20 mA, +/-5 mA, +/-10 mA, +/- 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	0.5 %	
• Resistance, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.3 %; +/-0.3 % at 0 to 48 Ohm (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 150 Ohm (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 300 Ohm (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 600 Ohm (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 5000 Ohm (4-conductor measurement, in range of 6000 Ohm); +/-0.4 % at 0 to 300 Ohm (3-conductor measurement), 0 to 600 Ohm (3-conductor measurement), 0 to 5000 Ohm (3-conductor measurement, in range of 6000 Ohm);		
• Resistance thermometer, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.4 %		+/-1 °C
Basic error limit (operational limit at 25 °C)			
• Voltage, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.15 %; +/-0.15 % at +/-250 mV, +/-500 mV, +/-1 V, +/-2.5 V, +/-5 V, 1 to 5 V, +/-10 V; +/-0.17 % at +/-80 mV; +/-0.19 % at +/-50 mV; +/-0.23 % at +/-25 mV;	0.1 %	
• Current, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.15 %; at 0 to 20 mA, +/-5 mA, +/-10 mA, +/- 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA	0.17 %	
• Resistance, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.15 %; +/-0.15 % at 0 to 48 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 150 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 300 ohms (4-conductor measurement), 0 to 5000 ohms (4-conductor measurement, in range of 6000 ohms); +/-0.3 % at 0 to 300 ohms (3-conductor measurement), 0 to 600 ohms (3-conductor measurement), 0 to 5000 ohms (3-conductor measurement, in range of 6000 ohms)		
• Resistance thermometer, relative to input area, (+/-)	0.3 %		+/-0,2 °C
Interrupts/diagnostics/status information			
Alarms			
• Diagnostic alarm	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes; Parameterizable
• Limit value alarm	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes	Yes
Diagnostic messages			
• Diagnostics	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes	Yes
Galvanic isolation			
Galvanic isolation analog inputs			
• Galvanic isolation analog inputs	Yes; internal / external	Yes; internal / external	Yes; internal / external
• between the channels	No	Yes	No
Permissible potential difference between the inputs (UCM)			
	120 V AC	120 V AC	none

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 431 analog input module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7431-7QH00-0AB0	6ES7431-7KF00-0AB0	6ES7431-7KF10-0AB0
	SM 431, 16AE, U/I/R/PT100, 16BIT	SM 431, 8AI, U/I/THERMO, 16BIT	SM 431, 8AI, RESIST/PT100, 16BIT
Isolation			
Isolation checked with	2120 V DC between bus and L+/M; 2120 V DC between bus and analog part; 500 V DC between bus and local ground; 707 V DC between analog part and L+/M; 2120 V DC between analog part and local ground; 2120 V DC between L+/M and local ground	1500 V DC	1500 V DC
Dimensions			
Width	25 mm	25 mm	25 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	210 mm	210 mm	210 mm
Weights			
Weight, approx.	500 g	650 g	650 g

Ordering data

Article No.	Article No.
SM 431 analog output modules	Cover film for labeling strips 6ES7492-2XX00-0AA0
16 inputs, non-isolated, 13 bit	Spare part
8 inputs, isolated, 13 bit	Labeling sheets for machine inscription
8 inputs, isolated, 14 bit, with linearization	DIN A4, for printing using laser printer; pack of 10
8 inputs, isolated, 14 bit	petrol 6ES7492-2AX00-0AA0
16 inputs, isolated, 16 bit, process interrupt capability	light-beige 6ES7492-2BX00-0AA0
8 inputs, isolated, 16 bit, process interrupt capability, for thermocouples (I, U)	yellow 6ES7492-2CX00-0AA0
8 inputs, isolated, 16 bit, process interrupt capability, for thermal resistors	red 6ES7492-2DX00-0AA0
Front connector	SIMATIC Manual Collection 6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0
48-pin	Electronic manuals on DVD, multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC Based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC
• with screw contacts, 1 unit	SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year 6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2
• with screw contacts, 84 units	Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates
• with spring-loaded terminals, 1 unit	
• with crimp contacts, 1 unit	
• with crimp contacts, 84 units	
1 unit; for 6ES7431-7KF00-0AB0; spare part, included in scope of delivery	
Measuring range module for analog inputs	
1 module for 2 inputs (spare part)	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 432 analog output module

1

Overview

- Analog outputs for the SIMATIC S7-400
- For the connection of analog actuators

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7432-1HF00-0AB0 SM 432, 8AO, U/I, 13BIT
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Load voltage L+	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	150 mA
from supply voltage L+, max.	400 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	9 W
Hardware configuration	
Slots	
• Required slots	1
Analog outputs	
Number of analog outputs	8
Voltage output, short-circuit protection	Yes
Voltage output, short-circuit current, max.	30 mA
Current output, no-load voltage, max.	19 V
Output ranges, voltage	
• 0 to 10 V	Yes
• 1 V to 5 V	Yes
• -10 V to +10 V	Yes
Output ranges, current	
• 0 to 20 mA	Yes
• -20 mA to +20 mA	Yes
• 4 mA to 20 mA	Yes

Article number	6ES7432-1HF00-0AB0 SM 432, 8AO, U/I, 13BIT
Load impedance (in rated range of output)	
• with voltage outputs, min.	1 k Ω
• with voltage outputs, capacitive load, max.	1 μ F
• with current outputs, max.	500 Ω ; 600 ohms if common-mode-voltage reduced to <1 V
Cable length	
• shielded, max.	200 m
Analog value creation	
Integration and conversion time/ resolution per channel	
• Resolution with overrange (bit including sign), max.	13 bit
• Conversion time (per channel)	420 μ s; 420 μ s in the ranges 1 to 5 V and 4 to 20 mA; 300 μ s in all ranges
Settling time	
• for resistive load	0.1 ms
• for capacitive load	3.5 ms
• for inductive load	0.5 ms
Errors/accuracies	
Operational limit in overall temperature range	
• Voltage, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.5 %; +/-10 V, 0 to 10 V, 1 to 5 V
• Current, relative to output area, (+/-)	1 %; +/-20 mA, 4 to 20 mV
Basic error limit (operational limit at 25 °C)	
• Voltage, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.5 %; +/-10 V, 0 to 10 V, 1 to 5 V
• Current, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.5 %; +/-20 mA, 0 to 20 mA
Interrupts/diagnostics/ status information	
Substitute values connectable	No
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation analog outputs	
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes
Isolation	
Isolation checked with	2120 V DC between bus and L+/M; 2120 V DC between bus and analog part; 500 V DC between bus and local ground; 707 V DC between analog part and L+/M; 2120 V DC between analog part and local ground; 2120 V DC between L+/M and local ground
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	650 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Analog modules

SM 432 analog output module

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
SM 432 analog output module 8 outputs, isolated, 13 bit	6ES7432-1HF00-0AB0	SIMATIC Manual Collection Electronic manuals on DVD, multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC Based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0
Front connector 48-pin • with screw contacts, 1 unit • with screw contacts, 84 units • with spring-loaded terminals, 1 unit • with crimp contacts, 1 unit • with crimp contacts, 84 units	6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0 6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0 6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0 6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0	SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates	6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2
Cover film for labeling strips Spare part	6ES7492-2XX00-0AA0		
Labeling sheets for machine inscription DIN A4, for printing using laser printer; pack of 10 petrol light-beige yellow red	6ES7492-2AX00-0AA0 6ES7492-2BX00-0AA0 6ES7492-2CX00-0AA0 6ES7492-2DX00-0AA0		

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller**SIPLUS S7-400 analog modules****SIPLUS S7-400 SM 431 analog input modules**

1

Overview

- Analog inputs for SIMATIC S7-400
- For connecting voltage sensors and current sensors, thermocouples, resistors and resistance thermometers
- Resolution 13 to 16 bit

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1431-0HH00-4AB0
Based on	6ES7431-0HH00-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 SM431 16AI
Ambient conditions	
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.**

SIPLUS S7-400 SM 431 analog input module	
16 inputs, non-floating, 13 bit	
Exposure to media	6AG1431-0HH00-4AB0
Accessories	See SIMATIC S7-400 analog input modules, page 1/65

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 analog modules

SIPLUS S7-400 SM 432 analog output modules

1

Overview



- Analog outputs for SIMATIC S7-400
- For connection of analog actuators

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1432-1HF00-4AB0
Based on	6ES7432-1HF00-4AB0 SIPLUS_SM432_8AA
Ambient conditions	
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation, tested in accordance with IEC 60068-2-38, max.	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data

Article No.

SIPLUS S7-400 SM 432 analog output module

8 outputs, floating, 13 bit

Exposure to media

6AG1432-1HF00-4AB0

Accessories

See SIMATIC S7-400 analog output modules, page 1/67

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 450-1 counter module

1

Overview



- Two-channel intelligent counter module for simple counting tasks
- For direct connection of incremental encoders
- Comparison function with 2 specifiable comparison values
- Integrated digital outputs for outputting the response when the comparison values are reached

Note

SIMODRIVE Sensor/Motion Connect 500 feature incremental encoders and preassembled connecting cables for counting and positioning functions.

www.siemens.com/simatic-technology

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7450-1AP01-0AE0 FM 450-1, COUNTER MODULE, 2 CHANNELS
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Load voltage 1L+	
• Reverse polarity protection	Yes
Load voltage 2L+	
• Reverse polarity protection	Yes
Aux. voltage 1L+, load voltage 2L+	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• permissible range, lower limit (DC)	20.4 V; Dynamic 18.5 V
• permissible range, upper limit (DC)	28.8 V; dynamic 30.2 V
non-periodic skip	
- Duration	500 ms
- Recovery time	50 s
- Value	35 V
Input current	
from load voltage 1L+ (without load), max.	50 mA
from load voltage 2L+ (without load), max.	60 µA
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	300 mA
Encoder supply	
5 V encoder supply	
• 5 V	Yes; 5.2 V +/-2 %
• short-circuit protection	Yes
• Output current, max.	300 mA
24 V encoder supply	
• 24 V	Yes; 1L+ (-3 V)
• short-circuit protection	Yes
• Output current, max.	300 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, typ.	6 W

Article number	6ES7450-1AP01-0AE0 FM 450-1, COUNTER MODULE, 2 CHANNELS
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	6
Functions	1 for gate start, 1 for gate stop, 1 for setting the counter
Input voltage	
• for signal "0"	-28.8 ... +5V
• for signal "1"	+11 to +28.8V
Input current	
• for signal "1", typ.	9 mA
Input delay (for rated value of input voltage)	
• Input frequency (with a time delay of 0.1 ms), max.	200 kHz
for standard inputs	
- Parameterizable	Yes
- at "0" to "1", max.	2.5 µs; >= 2.5 µs (200 kHz); <= 25 µs (20 kHz)
Digital outputs	
Number of digital outputs	4
short-circuit protection	Yes; Clocked electronically
Limitation of inductive shutdown voltage to	2L+ (-39 V)
Output voltage	
• for signal "0", max.	3 V
• for signal "1", min.	2L+ (-1.5 V)
Output current	
• for signal "1" rated value	0.5 A; Res. / P.D. 5 W tungsten 24 V DC
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, min.	5 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, max.	0.6 A
Output delay with resistive load	
• "0" to "1", max.	300 µs

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 450-1 counter module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7450-1AP01-0AE0 FM 450-1, COUNTER MODULE, 2 CHANNELS
Encoder	
Connectable encoders	
• Incremental encoder (symmetrical)	Yes; With 2 pulse trains offset by 90°
• Incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	Yes
• 24 V initiator	Yes
• 24 V directional element	Yes; 1 pulse train, 1 direction level
Counter	
Number of counter inputs	2; 32 bit or +/-31 bit
Counter input 5 V	
• Type	RS 422
• Terminating resistor	220 Ω
• Differential input voltage	min. 0.5 V
• Counting frequency, max.	500 kHz
Counter input 24 V	
• Input voltage, for signal "0"	-30 to +5V
• Input voltage, for signal "1"	+11 to +30V
• Input current, for signal "1", typ.	9 mA
• Counting frequency, max.	200 kHz
• Minimum pulse width	>= 2.5 μs (200 kHz); >= 25 μs (20 kHz) (parameterizable)
Parameter	
Remark	Assigned binary addresses: 64 bytes / 64 bytes
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes; Optocoupler
Galvanic isolation digital outputs	
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes; Optocoupler
Galvanic isolation counter	
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes; Optocoupler
Permissible potential difference	
between different circuits	75V DC/60V AC
Isolation	
Isolation checked with	500 V
Connection method	
required front connector	1x 48-pin
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	650 g

Ordering data

Article No.

FM 450-1 counter module

with 2 channels, max. 500 kHz;
for incremental encoder

6ES7450-1AP01-0AE0

Front connectors

48-pin

- with screw contacts, 1 item
- with screw contacts, 84 items
- with spring-loaded terminals, 1 item
- with crimp contacts, 1 item
- with crimp contacts, 84 items

6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0
6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0
6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0

6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0
6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0

Front covers for CPU and function modules

Spare part

6ES7492-1XL00-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 451 positioning module

1

Overview



- Three-channel positioning module for rapid/slow-action drives
- 4 digital outputs per channel for motor control
- Displacement measurement incremental or synchronous-serial

Note

Displacement measuring systems and precut/preassembled cables for counting and positioning functions are available under SIMODRIVE Sensor or Motion Connect 500.

www.siemens.com/simatic-technology

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7451-3AL00-0AE0 FM 451 positioning module
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 24 V DC	Yes
Input current	
Current consumption, max.	550 mA
Encoder supply	
5 V encoder supply	
• 5 V	Yes
• Output current, max.	210 mA
• Cable length, max.	35 m; at max. 210 mA
24 V encoder supply	
• 24 V	Yes
• Output current, max.	300 mA
• Cable length, max.	100 m; at max. 300 mA
Absolute encoder (SSI) encoder supply	
• Absolute encoder (SSI)	Yes
• Type of output voltage	24 V DC
• Output current, max.	300 mA
• Cable length, max.	300 m; At max. 156 kbit/s
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	12; 4 per axis
Functions	Reference cams, reversing cams, flying actual value setting, start/stop positioning
Input voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "0"	-3 to +5V
• for signal "1"	+11 to +30V
Input current	
• for signal "1", typ.	6 mA
for 2-wire sensor	
- for signal "1", typ.	30 mA

Article number	6ES7451-3AL00-0AE0 FM 451 positioning module
Digital outputs	
Number of digital outputs	12; 4 per axis
Functions	Rapid traverse, creep, run right, run left
short-circuit protection	Yes
Output voltage	
• for signal "1", min.	UP - 3 V
Output current	
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 55 °C, max.	600 mA; with UPmax
• for signal "0" residual current, max.	0.5 mA
Encoder	
Connectable encoders	
• Incremental encoder (symmetrical)	Yes
• Incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	Yes
• Absolute encoder (SSI)	Yes
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (symmetrical)	
• Trace mark signals	A, notA, B, notB
• Zero mark signal	N, notN
• Input signal	5 V difference signal (phys. RS 422)
• Input frequency, max.	1 MHz
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	
• Trace mark signals	A, B
• Zero mark signal	N
• Input voltage	24 V
• Input frequency, max.	50 kHz; for 25 m cable length, 25 kHz for 100 m cable length
• Cable length, shielded, max.	100 m
Encoder signals, absolute encoder (SSI)	
• Input signal	5 V difference signal (phys. RS 422)
• Data signal	DATA, notDATA
• Clock signal	CL, notCL
• Message frame length, parameterizable	13 or 25 bit serial
• Clock frequency, max.	1.25 MHz
• Gray code	1
• Cable length, shielded, max.	300 m; At max. 156 kbit/s

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 451 positioning module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7451-3AL00-0AE0 FM 451 positioning module
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital inputs	Yes
Galvanic isolation digital outputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital outputs	Yes
Degree and class of protection	
Degree of protection to EN 60529	
• IP20	Yes
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	0 °C
• max.	55 °C
Storage/transport temperature	
• Min.	-40 °C
• max.	70 °C
Relative humidity	
• Humidity class F	Yes
Connection method	
required front connector	1x 48-pin
Dimensions	
Width	50 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	1 300 g

Ordering data

Article No.

Signal cable

Pre-assembled for SSI absolute encoder, UL/DESINA

6FX50

2-2CC11-

Pre-assembled for TTL encoder 6FX2001-1, UL/DESINA

6FX50

2-2CD01-

Pre-assembled for TTL encoder 24 V, UL/DESINA

6FX50

2-2CD24-

Not crimped

0

Module end crimped, connector case supplied

1

Motor end crimped, connector case supplied

4

0 m

1

100 m

2

200 m

3

0 m

A

10 m

B

20 m

C

30 m

D

40 m

E

50 m

F

60 m

G

70 m

H

80 m

J

90 m

K

0 m

A

1 m

B

2 m

C

3 m

D

4 m

E

5 m

F

6 m

G

7 m

H

8 m

J

0 m

K

0.0 m

0

0.1 m

1

0.2 m

2

0.3 m

3

0.4 m

4

0.5 m

5

0.6 m

6

0.7 m

7

0.8 m

8

Ordering data

Article No.

FM 451 positioning module	6ES7451-3AL00-0AE0
for rapid traverse and creep speed drives	
Front connector	
48-pin	
• with screw contacts, 1 item	6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0
• with screw contacts, 84 items	6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0
• with spring-loaded terminals, 1 item	6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0
• with crimp contacts, 1 item	6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0
• with crimp contacts, 84 items	6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0
Front covers for CPU and function modules	6ES7492-1XL00-0AA0
Spare part	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 452 cam controller

1

Overview



- Very high speed electronic cam controller
- Low-cost alternative to mechanical cam controllers
- 32 cam tracks, 16 onboard digital outputs for direct output of actions
- Incremental or synchronous-serial position feedback

Note:

We offer position measuring systems and preassembled connecting cables for counting and positioning functions under SIMODRIVE Sensor or Motion Connect 500.

www.siemens.com/simatic-technology

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7452-1AH00-0AE0 FM 452 electronic cam controller
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 24 V DC	Yes
Input current	
Current consumption, max.	500 mA
Encoder supply	
5 V encoder supply	
• 5 V	Yes
• Output current, max.	300 mA
• Cable length, max.	32 m
24 V encoder supply	
• 24 V	Yes
• Output current, max.	300 mA
• Cable length, max.	100 m
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	11
Functions	Reference point switch, flying actual value setting/length measurement, brake release, enable track output nos. 3 to 10

Article number	6ES7452-1AH00-0AE0 FM 452 electronic cam controller
Input voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "0"	-28.8 ... +5V
• for signal "1"	+11 to +28.8V
Input current	
• for signal "0", max. (permissible quiescent current)	2 mA
for 2-wire sensor	
- for signal "1", typ.	9 mA
Digital outputs	
Number of digital outputs	16
Functions	Cam track
short-circuit protection	Yes
Output voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "1", min.	UP - 0.8 V
Output current	
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 55 °C, max.	600 mA; with UPmax
• for signal "0" residual current, max.	0.5 mA
Encoder	
Connectable encoders	
• Incremental encoder (symmetrical)	Yes
• Incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	Yes
• Absolute encoder (SSI)	Yes
• 2-wire sensor	Yes
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (symmetrical)	
• Trace mark signals	A, notA, B, notB
• Zero mark signal	N, notN
• Input signal	5 V difference signal (phys. RS 422)
• Input frequency, max.	1 MHz
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	
• Trace mark signals	A, B
• Zero mark signal	N
• Input voltage	24 V
• Input frequency, max.	50 kHz; 50 kHz for 25 m cable length; 25 kHz for 100 m cable length
Encoder signals, absolute encoder (SSI)	
• Input signal	5 V difference signal (phys. RS 422)
• Data signal	DATA, notDATA
• Clock signal	CL, notCL
• Message frame length, parameterizable	13 or 25 bit serial
• Clock frequency, max.	1 MHz
• Gray code	1
• Cable length, shielded, max.	300 m; at max. 125 kHz
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital inputs	No
Galvanic isolation digital outputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital outputs	No
Degree and class of protection	
Degree of protection to EN 60529	
• IP20	Yes

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 452 cam controller

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7452-1AH00-0AE0 FM 452 electronic cam controller
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	0 °C
• max.	55 °C
Storage/transport temperature	
• Min.	-40 °C
• max.	70 °C
Relative humidity	
• Humidity class F	Yes
Connection method	
required front connector	1x 48-pin
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	650 g

Ordering data

Article No.

FM 452 electronic cam controller	6ES7452-1AH00-0AE0
Front covers for CPU and function modules	6ES7492-1XL00-0AA0
Spare part	
Front connector	
48-pin	
• with screw contacts, 1 item	6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0
• with screw contacts, 84 items	6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0
• with spring-loaded terminals, 1 item	6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0
• with crimp contacts, 1 item	6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0
• with crimp contacts, 84 items	6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0
Signal cable	
Pre-assembled for HTL and TTL encoder, without Sub-D connector, UL/DESINA	6FX5002-2CA12-■ ■ ■ ■
Pre-assembled for SSI absolute encoder 6FX2001-5, without Sub-D connector, UL/DESINA	6FX5002-2CC12-■ ■ ■ ■
Length code	see FM 451, page 1/73

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 453 positioning module

1

Overview



- Positioning module for servo and/or stepper motors in machines with high clock-pulse rates
- Can be used for simple point-to-point positioning and for complex traversing profiles
- Up to 3 independent motors can be controlled

Note:

We offer position measuring systems and preassembled connecting cables for counting and positioning functions under SIMODRIVE Sensor or Motion Connect 500.

Further information can be found on the Internet at:

www.siemens.com/simatic-technology

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7453-3AH00-0AE0 FM 453 positioning module
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Auxiliary voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• dynamic range	18.5 to 30.2 V
• static area	20.4 to 28.8V
Input current	
from load voltage 1L+, max.	1 A; with 24 V position encoder; 1 A for 5 V position encoder
from load voltage 2L+ to 4L+, max.	2 A; Per channel
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	1.6 A; Rated current
Encoder supply	
5 V encoder supply	
• 5 V	Yes
• Output current, max.	300 mA
• Cable length, max.	35 m; at max. 210 mA; 25 m at max. 300 mA
24 V encoder supply	
• 24 V	Yes
• Cable length, max.	100 m; at max. 300 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	8 W
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	6; for each channel / axis
Functions	configurable
Input voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "0"	-3 to +5 V (max. 3 mA)
• for signal "1"	11 to 30 V (max. 7 mA)
Input delay (for rated value of input voltage) for standard inputs	
- at "0" to "1", max.	15 µs; via input voltage range, 8 µs at 24 V DC
- at "1" to "0", max.	45 µs; via input voltage range

Article number	6ES7453-3AH00-0AE0 FM 453 positioning module
Digital outputs	
Number of digital outputs	4; for each channel / axis
Functions	configurable
short-circuit protection	Yes
Output voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "1", min.	UP - 0,3 V
Output current	
• for signal "1" rated value	0.5 A; at 40 °C; 0.1 A at 60 °C
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 40 °C, min.	5 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 40 °C, max.	0.6 A
• for signal "1" permissible range for 40 to 60 °C, min.	5 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 40 to 60 °C, max.	0.12 A
• for signal "0" residual current, max.	2 mA
Switching frequency	
• with resistive load, max.	100 Hz
• with inductive load, max.	0.25 Hz
Encoder	
Connectable encoders	
• Incremental encoder (symmetrical)	Yes
• Absolute encoder (SSI)	Yes
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (symmetrical)	
• Input signal	5 V difference signal (phys. RS 422)
• Input frequency, max.	1 MHz; for 10 m cable length; 0.5 MHz for 35 m cable length
Encoder signals, absolute encoder (SSI)	
• Input signal	5 V difference signal (phys. RS 422)
• Clock frequency, max.	1.25 Mbit/s at 10 cable length (2.5 Mbit/s available soon)
• Cable length, shielded, max.	250 m; At max. 156 kbit/s

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 453 positioning module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7453-3AH00-0AE0 FM 453 positioning module
Drive interface	
Signal input I	
• Type	Drive interface step, signal input "READY 1"
• Function	"Power section ready" where $U_i < 1\text{ V}$, $I_i = 2\text{ mA}$
Signal output I	
• Type	5 V (phys. RS 422)
• Function	Clock pulse, direction, enable, current control
• Differential output voltage, min.	2 V; $R_L = 100\text{ ohms}$
• Differential output voltage for signal "0", max.	1.1 V; $I_o = 30\text{ mA}$
• Differential output voltage, for signal "1", min.	3.7 V; $I_o = -30\text{ mA}$
• Load impedance	55 Ω
• Pulse frequency	200 kHz; 500 kHz available soon
• Cable length, max.	35 m; 35 m with symm. transmission; 10 m with asymm. transmission
Signal output II	
• Type	Contact relay
• Function	Drive disconnection for operation
• Load	1 A/50 V / 30 VA DC
Signal output III	
• Type	Analog output
• Function	Drive interface Servo: Setpoint output for drive
• Output current	-3 to +3 mA
• Cable length, max.	30 m
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital inputs	Yes; Optocoupler
Galvanic isolation digital outputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital outputs	Yes; Optocoupler
Degree and class of protection	
Degree of protection to EN 60529	
• IP20	Yes
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	0 °C
• max.	55 °C
Storage/transport temperature	
• Min.	-40 °C
• max.	70 °C
Relative humidity	
• Humidity class F	No
Connection method	
required front connector	1x 48-pin
Dimensions	
Width	50 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	1 620 g

Ordering data

Article No.

FM 453 positioning module with 3 channels/axes	6ES7453-3AH00-0AE0
Setpoint connecting cable for 3 servo motors Length code	6FX2002-3AD01-■■■■■ See page 1/73
Front connector 48-pin • with screw contacts, 1 item • with screw contacts, 84 items • with spring-loaded terminals, 1 item • with crimp contacts, 1 item • with crimp contacts, 84 items	6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0 6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0 6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0 6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0 6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0
Front covers for CPU and function modules Spare part	6ES7492-1XL00-0AA0
Signal cable Pre-assembled for SSI absolute encoder, UL/DESINA Pre-assembled for TTL encoder 6FX2001-1, UL/DESINA Pre-assembled for TTL encoder 24 V, UL/DESINA Length code	6FX50 2-2CC11-■■■■■ 6FX50 2-2CD01-■■■■■ 6FX50 2-2CD24-■■■■■ See page 1/73

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 455 controller module

Overview



- 16-channel closed-loop control module for universal control tasks
- Can be used for temperature, pressure and flow controls
- Convenient online self-optimization for temperature controls
- Predefined controller structures
- 2 control algorithms
- 2 versions:
 - FM 455 C as continuous controller
 - FM 455 S as step or pulse controller
- With 16 analog outputs (FM 455 C) or 32 digital outputs (FM 455 S) for actuators

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7455-0VS00-0AE0 FM 455 C controller module	6ES7455-1VS00-0AE0 FM 455 S controller module
Product type designation		
Supply voltage		
Load voltage L+		
• Rated value (DC)	24 V	24 V
• permissible range, lower limit (DC)	20.4 V	20.4 V
• permissible range, upper limit (DC)	28.8 V	28.8 V
Input current		
from load voltage L+ (without load), max.	440 mA; typ. 370 mA	400 mA; typ. 330 mA
Power losses		
Power loss, typ.	12 W	10.7 W
Power loss, max.	17.3 W	16.2 W
Digital inputs		
Number of digital inputs	16	16
Input characteristic curve in accordance with IEC 61131, type 2	Yes	Yes
Input voltage		
• Rated value (DC)	24 V	24 V
• for signal "0"	-3 to +5V	-3 to +5V
• for signal "1"	13 to 30V	13 to 30V
Input current		
• for signal "1", typ.	7 mA	7 mA
Cable length		
• shielded, max.	1 000 m	1 000 m
• Unshielded, max.	600 m	600 m
Digital outputs		
Number of digital outputs		32
short-circuit protection		Yes; Electronic
Limitation of inductive shutdown voltage to		L+ (-1.5 V)
Controlling a digital input		Yes
Switching capacity of the outputs		
• on lamp load, max.		5 W

Article number	6ES7455-0VS00-0AE0 FM 455 C controller module	6ES7455-1VS00-0AE0 FM 455 S controller module
Load resistance range		
• lower limit		240 Ω
• upper limit		4 kΩ
Output voltage		
• for signal "1", min.		L+ (-2.5 V)
Output current		
• for signal "1" rated value		0.1 A
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, min.		5 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 60 °C, max.		150 mA
• for signal "0" residual current, max.		0.5 mA
Parallel switching of 2 outputs		
• for logic links		Yes
Switching frequency		
• with resistive load, max.		100 Hz
• with inductive load, max.		0.5 Hz
• on lamp load, max.		100 Hz
Cable length		
• shielded, max.		1 000 m
• Unshielded, max.		600 m
Analog inputs		
Number of analog inputs	16; With thermo- couples or 2-wire connection; 8 with Pt 100 or 4-wire connection	16; With thermo- couples or 2-wire connection; 8 with Pt 100 or 4-wire connection
permissible input voltage for voltage input (destruction limit), max.	20 V	20 V
permissible input current for current input (destruction limit), max.	40 mA	40 mA

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 455 controller module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7455-0VS00-0AE0 FM 455 C controller module	6ES7455-1VS00-0AE0 FM 455 S controller module
Input ranges (rated values), voltages		
• 0 to +10 V	Yes	Yes
• -1.75 V to +11.75 V	Yes	Yes
• -80 mV to +80 mV	Yes	Yes
Input ranges (rated values), currents		
• 0 to 20 mA	Yes	Yes
• 0 to 23.5 mA	Yes	Yes
• -3.5 mA to +23.5 mA	Yes	Yes
• 4 mA to 20 mA	Yes	Yes
Input ranges (rated values), thermoelements		
• Type B	Yes	Yes
• Type J	Yes	Yes
• Type K	Yes	Yes
• Type R	Yes	Yes
• Type S	Yes	Yes
Input ranges (rated values), resistance thermometer		
• Pt 100	Yes	Yes
Thermocouple (TC)		
Temperature compensation		
- internal temperature compensation	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes; Parameterizable
- external temperature compensation with Pt100	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes; Parameterizable
Characteristic linearization		
• Parameterizable	Yes	Yes
- for thermocouples	Type B, J, K, R, S	Type B, J, K, R, S
- for resistance thermometer	Pt100 (standard)	Pt100 (standard)
Cable length		
• shielded, max.	200 m; 50 m at 80 mV and thermocouples	200 m; 50 m at 80 mV and thermocouples
Analog outputs		
Number of analog outputs	16	
Voltage output, short-circuit protection	Yes	
Voltage output, short-circuit current, max.	25 mA	
Current output, no-load voltage, max.	18 V	
Output ranges, voltage		
• 0 to 10 V	Yes	
• -10 V to +10 V	Yes	
Output ranges, current		
• 0 to 20 mA	Yes	
• -20 mA to +20 mA	Yes	
• 4 mA to 20 mA	Yes	
Connection of actuators		
• for voltage output two-wire connection	Yes	
• for current output two-wire connection	Yes	

Article number	6ES7455-0VS00-0AE0 FM 455 C controller module	6ES7455-1VS00-0AE0 FM 455 S controller module
Load impedance (in rated range of output)		
• with voltage outputs, min.	1 kΩ	
• with voltage outputs, capacitive load, max.	1 μF	
• with current outputs, max.	500 Ω	
• with current outputs, inductive load, max.	1 mH	
Cable length		
• shielded, max.	200 m; 50 m at 80 mV and thermocouples	
Analog value creation		
Measurement principle	integrating	integrating
Integration and conversion time/resolution per channel		
• Resolution with overrange (bit including sign), max.	14 bit; 12 or 14 bit, parameterizable	14 bit; 12 or 14 bit, parameterizable
• Conversion time (per channel)	16.67 ms; for 12 bit: 16 2/3 ms for 60 Hz, 20 ms for 50 Hz; for 14 bit: 100 ms for 50 and 60 Hz	16.67 ms; for 12 bit: 16 2/3 ms for 60 Hz, 20 ms for 50 Hz; for 14 bit: 100 ms for 50 and 60 Hz
Settling time		
• for resistive load	0.2 ms	0.1 ms
• for capacitive load	3.3 ms	3.3 ms
• for inductive load	0.5 ms	0.5 ms
Encoder		
Connection of signal encoders		
• for voltage measurement	Yes	Yes
• for current measurement as 4-wire transducer	Yes	Yes
Connectable encoders		
• 2-wire sensor	Yes	Yes
- Permissible quiescent current (2-wire sensor), max.	1.5 mA	1.5 mA
Errors/accuracies		
Linearity error (relative to input range), (+/-)	0.05 %	0.05 %
Temperature error (relative to input range), (+/-)	0.005 %/K	0.005 %/K
Linearity error (relative to output range), (+/-)	0.05 %	
Temperature error (relative to output range), (+/-)	0.02 %/K	
Operational limit in overall temperature range		
• Voltage, relative to input area, (+/-)	+/-0.6 to +/-1 %	+/-0.6 to +/-1 %
• Current, relative to input area, (+/-)	+/-0.6 to +/-1 %	+/-0.6 to +/-1 %
• Resistance thermometer, relative to input area, (+/-)	+/-0.6 to +/-1 %	+/-0.6 to +/-1 %
• Voltage, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.5 %	
• Current, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.6 %	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 455 controller module

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7455-0VS00-0AE0 FM 455 C controller module	6ES7455-1VS00-0AE0 FM 455 S controller module
Basic error limit (operational limit at 25 °C)		
• Voltage, relative to input area, (+/-)	+/-0.4 to +/-0.6 %	+/-0.4 to +/-0.6 %
• Current, relative to input area, (+/-)	+/-0.4 to +/-0.6 %	+/-0.4 to +/-0.6 %
• Resistance thermometer, relative to input area, (+/-)	+/-0.4 to +/-0.6 %	+/-0.4 to +/-0.6 %
• Voltage, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.4 %	
• Current, relative to output area, (+/-)	0.5 %	
Interference voltage suppression for $f = n \times (f_1 \pm 1 \%)$, f_1 = interference frequency		
• Series mode interference (peak value of interference < rated value of input range), min.	40 dB	40 dB
• common mode voltage ($U_{SS} < 2.5 \text{ V}$), min.	70 dB	70 dB
Interrupts/diagnostics/ status information		
Substitute values connectable	Yes; Parameterizable	Yes; Parameterizable
Control technology		
Number of closed-loop controllers	16; With thermo- couples or 2-wire connection; 8 with Pt 100 or 4-wire connection	16; With thermo- couples or 2-wire connection; 8 with Pt 100 or 4-wire connection
Galvanic isolation		
Galvanic isolation controller		
• between the channels	No	No
• between the channels and the backplane bus	Yes; Optocoupler	Yes; Optocoupler
Permissible potential difference		
between inputs and MANA (UCM)	2.5 V DC	2.5 V DC
between M internally and the inputs	75V DC/60V AC	75V DC/60V AC
Isolation		
Isolation checked with	500 V DC	500 V DC
Connection method		
required front connector	2x 48-pin	2x 48-pin
Dimensions		
Width	50 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	210 mm	210 mm
Weights		
Weight, approx.	1 400 g	1 400 g

Ordering data

Article No.

FM 455 C controller module
with 16 analog outputs
for 16 continuous controllers

6ES7455-0VS00-0AE0

FM 455 S controller module
with 32 digital outputs
for 16 step or pulse controllers

6ES7455-1VS00-0AE0

Front connectors

48-pin

- with screw contacts, 1 item
- with screw contacts, 84 items
- with spring-loaded terminals,
1 item
- with crimp contacts, 1 item
- with crimp contacts, 84 items

6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0

6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0

6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0

6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0

6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0

Overview***SIMATIC FM 458-1 DP integrated in SIMATIC S7-400***

- Designed for high-performance and user-configurable closed-loop control tasks in the SIMATIC S7-400.
- Can be adapted to individual requirements as required, such as:
Controlling, computing, closed-loop control as well as motion control. Can therefore be used flexibly for a wide variety of applications.
- Extensive library with approx. 300 function blocks:
E.g. simple functions such as AND, ADD and OR through to complex GMC (general motion control) blocks as virtual master or gear functions.
- User-friendly graphical configuration with the SIMATIC engineering tool CFC (Continuous Function Chart) and the D7-SYS add-on software package:
Optimum code generation by the compiler, therefore SCL is not required.
- PROFIBUS DP interface onboard.

SIMATIC FM 458-1 DP is based on more than 15 years experience with high-performance control systems and combines this know-how with the advantages of SIMATIC – the leading automation system for decades. In contrast to other function modules with static structures/functions, the FM 458-1 DP application module can be configured flexibly and adapted to individual requirements.

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 458-1 DP application module

FM 458-1 DP basic module

1

Overview

- Basic module for handling arithmetic, closed-loop control and open-loop control tasks
- PROFIBUS DP interface for connection of distributed I/O and drives
- Modular design with expansion modules for I/O and communication

Technical specifications

Article number	6DD1607-0AA2 FM458-1 DP APPLICATION MODULE
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 5 V DC	Yes
• 24 V DC	Yes
permissible range (ripple included), lower limit (DC)	4.8 V
permissible range (ripple included), upper limit (DC)	5.25 V
Input current	
Current consumption, typ.	1.5 A
Current consumption, max.	3 A
Memory	
Backup	
• present	Yes; SRAM
Battery	
Backup battery	
• Battery operation	Yes
• Backup current, max.	15 µA
Hardware configuration	
Slots	
• Required slots	1
Time of day	
Clock	
• Hardware clock (real-time clock)	Yes
• Resolution	500 ms
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	8; Connector X2
Input voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "0"	-1 to +6 V
• for signal "1"	13.5 V to 33 V

Article number	6DD1607-0AA2 FM458-1 DP APPLICATION MODULE
Input current	
• for signal "0", max. (permissible quiescent current)	0 mA
• for signal "1", typ.	3 mA; at 24 V
Input delay (for rated value of input voltage) for standard inputs	
- at "0" to "1", max.	5 µs
Interfaces	
PROFIBUS DP	
• equidistance	Yes; With connection to interrupt tasks
• Direct data exchange (slave-to-slave communication)	Yes
Interrupts/diagnostics/status information	
Alarms	
• Alarms	Yes
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital inputs	No; only via optional interface modules
Weights	
Weight, approx.	1 000 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 458-1 DP application module

FM 458-1 DP basic module

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
FM 458-1 DP application module Basic module for computing, closed-loop control and open-loop control tasks; with PROFIBUS DP interface	6DD1607-0AA2	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s Without PG interface With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
Micro Memory Card for FM 458-1 DP basic module 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB	6ES7953-8LL31-0AA0 6ES7953-8LM31-0AA0 6ES7953-8LP31-0AA0	RS 485 bus connector with angled cable outlet Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s Without PG interface With PG interface	6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0
FM 458-1 DP Know-How-Protect for protection of technological application modules against unauthorized copying	6DD1607-0GA0	RS 485 bus connector with 90° cable outlet for FastConnect connection system Max. transfer rate 12 Mbit/s Without PG interface • 1 unit • 100 units With PG interface • 1 unit • 100 units	6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BA52-0XB0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0 6ES7972-0BB52-0XB0
SC 64 interface cable To connect FM 458-1 to the serial port of a programming device/ PC	6DD1684-0GE0	PROFIBUS FastConnect bus cable Standard type with special design for quick mounting, 2-core, shielded, sold by the meter, max. delivery unit 1000 m, minimum ordering quantity 20 m Preferred lengths: 20 m 50 m 100 m	6XV1830-0EH10 6XV1830-0EN20 6XV1830-0EN50 6XV1830-0ET10
SB10 interface module To connect 8 binary I/Os to FM 458-1 DP	6DD1681-0AE2		
SB61 interface module To connect 8 binary I/Os to FM 458-1 DP, input voltage: 24/48 V DC	6DD1681-0EB3		
SU12 interface module To connect 10 signals to FM 458-1 DP	6DD1681-0AJ1		

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 458-1 DP application module

EXM 438-1 input/output expansion

1

Overview

- Optional plug-in expansion module for the FM 458-1 DP basic module
- For input and output of time-critical signals
- With digital and analog inputs/outputs
- Incremental and absolute value encoders can be connected
- 4 high-resolution analog outputs
- Fan-free operation up to 40°C

Technical specifications

Article number	6DD1607-0CA1 EXM 438-1 I/O EXPANSION
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 5 V DC	Yes
• 24 V DC	Yes; to be set up externally
Input current	
Current consumption, typ.	1.5 A
Encoder supply	
Output voltage	about 14 V (non-isolated)
short-circuit protection	Yes; Electronic
Output current	
• Rated value	100 mA
Hardware configuration	
Slots	
• Required slots	1
Digital inputs	
Number of digital inputs	16
Input voltage	
• Rated value (DC)	24 V
• for signal "0"	-1 to +6 V or input open
• for signal "1"	+13 to +33 V
Input current	
• for signal "0", max. (permissible quiescent current)	0 mA
• for signal "1", typ.	3 mA
Input delay (for rated value of input voltage) for standard inputs	
- at "0" to "1", max.	200 µs
Digital outputs	
Number of digital outputs	8
short-circuit protection	Yes; electronic/thermal
• Response threshold, typ.	250 mA
Limitation of inductive shutdown voltage to	Supply voltage +1 V

Article number	6DD1607-0CA1 EXM 438-1 I/O EXPANSION
Output voltage	
• for signal "0", max.	3 V
• for signal "1", max.	Supply voltage -2.5 V
Output current	
• for signal "1" rated value	50 mA
• for signal "1" permissible range for 0 to 40 °C, min.	100 mA
• for signal "0" residual current, max.	20 µA
• Total switching current	80 % at 50 °C all outputs 50 mA
Output delay with resistive load	
• "0" to "1", max.	15 µs
Analog inputs	
Number of analog inputs	5; Differential inputs
Input ranges (rated values), voltages	
• -10 V to +10 V	Yes; -10 V: +/-4 LSB; to +10 V: +/-4 LSB (1 LSB = 4.88 mV)
• Input resistance (-10 V to +10 V)	470 kΩ
Analog outputs	
Number of analog outputs	8; 4 outputs 16 bit; 4 outputs 12 bit
Voltage output, short-circuit protection	Yes; relative to frame
Voltage output, short-circuit current, max.	16 bits: 27 mA; 12 bits: 100 mA
Output ranges, voltage	
• -10 to +10 V	Yes
Analog value creation	
Integration and conversion time/ resolution per channel	
• Resolution with overrange (bit including sign), max.	4 AO: 16 bits, 4 AO: 12 bits, 5 AI: 12 bits
• Conversion time (per channel)	4 AO (16 bits): 2 µs; 4 AO (12 bits): 4 µs; 5 AI: 45 µs
Encoder	
Number of connectable encoders, max.	12; 8 incremental encoders (synchronizable), 4 absolute encoders

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6DD1607-0CA1 EXM 438-1 I/O EXPANSION
Connectable encoders	
• Incremental encoder (symmetrical)	Yes
• Incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	Yes
• Absolute encoder (SSI)	Yes; Single or multiturn encoder with SSI (synchronous serial) or EnDat interface
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (symmetrical)	
• Trace mark signals	1) for tracks A and B (90° out of phase), poss. with zero pulse N; 2) for separate forward and backward track
• Input signal	With 0 signal: -5 to 0 V; with 1 signal: +3 to +5 V; permissible input voltage range: differential voltage -5 to +5 V; max. input current: 15 mA (important: not limited on module side!)
Encoder signals, incremental encoder (asymmetrical)	
• Trace mark signals	Track A and B (phase-shifted by 90 degrees), possibly with zero pulse N
• Input voltage	with 0 signal: -30 to +4 V (at 15 mA load); with 1 signal: +8 to 30 V (at 15 mA load); permissible input voltage range: differential voltage -30 to +30 V
Encoder signals, absolute encoder (SSI)	
• Input signal	5 V acc. to RS 422
• Data signal	Dual-, Gray-, Gray-Excess-Code
• Clock frequency, max.	2 MHz; 100 kHz to 2 MHz (depending on cable length)
Errors/accuracies	
Linearity error (relative to output range), (+/-)	(+/- 1 LSB)
Galvanic isolation	
Galvanic isolation digital inputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital inputs	No
Galvanic isolation digital outputs	
• Galvanic isolation digital outputs	No
Galvanic isolation analog inputs	
• Galvanic isolation analog inputs	No
Galvanic isolation analog outputs	
• Galvanic isolation analog outputs	No
Weights	
Weight, approx.	1 kg

Ordering data

Article No.

EXM 438-1 input/output expansion	6DD1607-0CA1
for direct exchange of digital and analog signals between FM 458-1 DP and the plant	
SB10 interface module	6DD1681-0AE2
To connect 8 binary inputs or outputs to FM 458-1 DP	
SB61 interface module	6DD1681-0EB3
To connect 8 binary inputs to FM 458-1 DP, input voltage: 24/48 V DC	
SB71 interface module	6DD1681-0DH1
To connect 8 binary outputs to FM 458-1 DP, output voltage: 24/48 V DC	
SU12 interface module	6DD1681-0AJ1
To connect 10 signals to FM 458-1 DP	
SU13 interface module	6DD1681-0GK0
To connect 50 signals to FM 458-1 DP	
SC 62 interface cable	6DD1684-0GC0
To connect EXM 438-1 with up to 5 SBxx or SU12	
SC 63 interface cable	6DD1684-0GD0
To connect EXM 438-1 with an SU13	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 458-1 DP application module

EXM 448 universal communications expansion module

1

Overview

- Optional expansion module for the FM 458-1 DP basic module
- For fast communication over PROFIBUS DP or SIMOLINK
- EXM 448: With vacant slot for a MASTERDRIVES option module

Technical specifications

Article number	6DD1607-0EA0 S7-400, EXM 448 F. FM458
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 5 V DC	Yes
Hardware configuration	
Slots	
• Required slots	1
Weights	
Weight, approx.	0.8 kg

Ordering data**Article No.****EXM 448 universal communications expansion module****6DD1607-0EA0**

For fast communication, for example, with drives; with free slot for MASTERDRIVES option module

EXM 448-2 universal communications expansion module**Overview**

- Optional plug-in expansion module for the FM 458-1 DP basic module
- For high-speed communication over up to 2 SIMOLINK interfaces
- For coupling several FM 458-1 DP application modules in synchronism with the sampling time

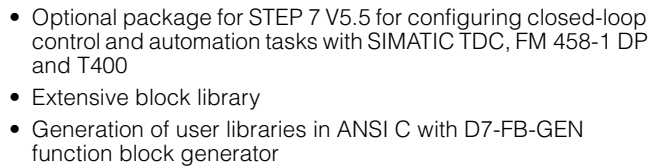
Technical specifications

Article number	6DD1607-0EA2 SIMATIC S7-400 EXM 448-2 COMM.-EXPANS.
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 5 V DC	Yes
Hardware configuration	
Slots	
• Required slots	1
Weights	
Weight, approx.	0.9 kg

Ordering data**Article No.****EXM 448-2 universal communications expansion****6DD1607-0EA2**

For high-speed communication with drives; for establishing two SIMOLINK fiber optic connections

Article No.



Current "Manual Collection" DVD
and the three subsequent updates:

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 458-1 DP application module

Accessories

1

Overview SC64 interface cable

(Similar to figure)

Interface cable for FM 458-1 DP basic module and SB10, SB60, SB61 and SU12 interface modules.

Overview SC63 interface cable

This cable is used to connect the SIMATIC TDC SM500 peripheral (I/O) module or the SIMATIC S7-400 EXM 438-1 expansion module to a SU13 interface module.

Overview SC62 interface cable

This cable is used to connect the SIMATIC TDC SM500 peripheral module (I/O) or the SIMATIC S7-400 EXM 438-1 expansion module to up to 5 interface modules SB10, SB60, SB70, SB61 SB71 and/or SU12.

Overview SB10 interface module

(Similar to figure)

The interface module is used to connect 8 digital inputs or outputs.

Overview SB61 interface module

It is used to connect 8 digital inputs with conversion from 24/48 V DC to 24 V DC.

Overview SU12 interface module

The interface module is used to connect 10 signals; there is no electronic conversion.

Overview SB71 interface module

The interface module is used to connect 8 digital outputs with conversion of the 24 V DC voltage on the module side to a max. of 24/48 V DC/AC on the plant side using transistors.

Overview SU13 interface module

This interface module can be used to connect 50 signals; there is no electronic conversion.

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Function modules

FM 458-1 DP application module

Accessories

1

Technical specifications**Technical specifications SB10 interface module**

Number of digital inputs or outputs	8
Electrical isolation	No
Max. cable cross-section	1.5 mm ²
Dimensions (W x H x D) in mm	45 x 130 x 156
Weight	0.3 kg

Technical specifications SB61 interface module

Number of digital inputs for	8
• Input voltage	24/48 V DC
Electrical isolation	Yes, via optocoupler
Max. cable cross-section	1.5 mm ²
Dimensions (W x H x D) in mm	45 x 130 x 156
Weight	0.32 kg

Technical specifications SB71 interface module

Number of digital outputs	8
• Output voltage, max	24/48 V DC
Output current, max.	40 mA, short-circuit proof
Electrical isolation	Yes, via optocoupler
Max. cable cross-section	1.5 mm ²
Dimensions (W x H x D) in mm	45 x 130 x 156
Weight	0.32 kg

Technical specifications SU12 interface module

Number of signal cables which can be connected	10
Signal amplitude per signal, max.	60 V, 0.5 A
Electrical isolation	No
Max. cable cross-section	1.5 mm ²
Dimensions (W x H x D) in mm	45 x 130 x 156
Weight	0.28 kg

Technical data S312 interface module

Number of signal cables which can be connected	50
Signal amplitude per signal, max.	60 V, 0.5 A
Electrical isolation	No
Max. cable cross-section	1.5 mm ²
Dimensions (W x H x D) in mm	45 x 130 x 156
Weight	0.3 kg

Ordering data**Article No.****SC64 interface cable**

between FM 458-1 DP (X2) module with SBxx or SU12 interface module, 2 m long

6DD1684-0GE0**SC62 interface cable**

between SM500 or EXM 438-1 module and max. 5 SB10, SB60, SB70, SB61 SB71 interface modules and/or SU12, 2 m long

6DD1684-0GC0**SC63 interface cable**

between SM500 or EXM 438-1 module and SU13 interface module, 2 m long

6DD1684-0GD0**SB10 interface module**

8 digital inputs/outputs 24 V DC

6DD1681-0AE2**SB61 interface module**

8 digital inputs 24/48 V DC

6DD1681-0EB3**SB71 interface module**

8 digital outputs with transistors, 24/48 V DC

6DD1681-0DH1**SU12 interface module**

with plug-in connector, 10-pole

6DD1681-0AJ1**SU13 interface module**

with screw-type plug-in connector

6DD1681-0GK0

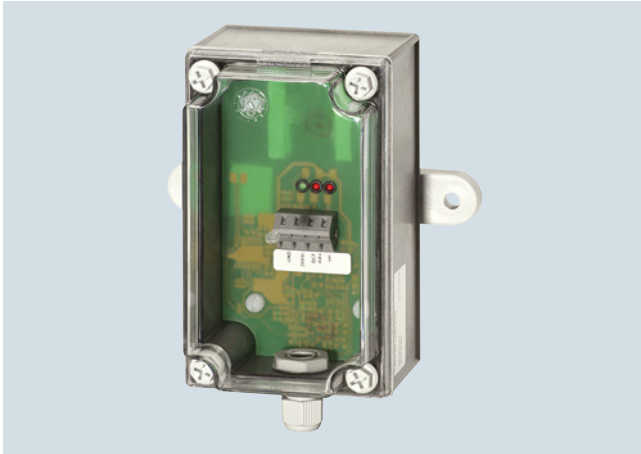
SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 function modules

SIPLUS DCF 77 radio clock module

1

Overview



This module can be used to synchronize the real-time clock of the SIMATIC/SIPLUS S7-200, S7-300 and S7-400 automation systems with the official time of the DCF 77 time signal transmitter of the Physikalisch-Technische Bundesanstalt Braunschweig, Germany.

The time is received by means of a DCF receiver (antenna with electronics) which is connected via two digital inputs on the SIMATIC PLC and SIPLUS together with a software driver available as a download (function block FB):

www.siemens.com/siplus - Support - Tools and Downloads!

Technical specifications

Radio clock module SIPLUS DCF 77

Radio frequency	77.5 Hz
Power supply	24 V DC (20.4 to 28.8 DC)
Power consumption, typ.	50 mA
Dimensions (W x H x D)	75 mm x 125 mm ¹⁾ x 75 mm

¹⁾ Additionally 25 mm (0.98 in) for heavy duty threaded joint and bending radius for cables

Ordering data

Article No.

SIPLUS DCF 77 radio clock module

For synchronizing SIMATIC S7-200, S7-300 and S7-400 with the official time of the DCF 77 time signal transmitter of the Physikalisch-Technische Bundesanstalt Braunschweig, Germany

6AG1057-1AA03-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 440

Overview



- For high-performance transmission of messages via point-to-point connections (high message rate)
- Physical interface: RS 422/RS 485 (X.27)
- Up to 32 nodes
- Protocol implemented: ASCII, 3964 (R)
- Simple parameterization via a parameterization tool integrated into STEP 7

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7440-1CS00-0YE0 CP 440-1, PTP-CONNECTIONS, 1 CHANNEL
Product type designation	
Supply voltage	
Rated value (DC)	
• 5 V DC	Yes
• 24 V DC	Yes
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	360 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, typ.	1.7 W
Memory	
Memory requirements per interface in memory card of S7-CPU	1 to 5 Kbytes for parameters
Interfaces	
Number of interfaces	1
Interface physics, RS 422/RS 485 (X.27)	Yes
RS 422/485, cable length, shielded, max.	1 200 m
Point-to-point	
Integrated protocol driver	
- 3964 (R)	Yes
- ASCII	Yes
Transmission speed, RS 422/485	
- with 3964 (R) protocol, max.	115.2 kbit/s
- with ASCII protocol, max.	115.2 kbit/s
Configuration	
Configuration software	
• STEP 7	Yes; own parameter assignment forms
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	600 g

Ordering data

Article No.

CP 440 communications processor with one RS 422/485 (X.27) interface	6ES7440-1CS00-0YE0
RS 422/485 connecting cable for linking to SIMATIC S7	
5 m	6ES7902-3AB00-0AA0
10 m	6ES7902-3AC00-0AA0
50 m	6ES7902-3AG00-0AA0

Overview



- For fast, high-performance serial data exchange via point-to-point connection
- 2 versions:
 - CP 441-1 with 1 variable interface for easy point-to-point coupling.
 - CP 441-2 with 2 variable interfaces for high-performance point-to-point connection.
- Plug-in interface modules for different physical transmission properties:
 - RS 232C (V.24), 20 mA (TTY) or RS 422/RS 485 (X.27)
- Implemented protocols: ASCII, 3964 (R), printer driver; for CP 441-2 additional RK 512 and Modbus RTU (reloadable)
- Simple parameter assignment using tool integrated in STEP 7

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7441-1AA05-0AE0 CP 441-1, PTP-CONN., 1 CHANNEL	6ES7441-2AA05-0AE0 CP 441-2, PTP-CONN., 2 CHANNELS
Product type designation		
Supply voltage		
Rated value (DC)		
• 5 V DC	Yes	Yes
• 24 V DC	Yes	Yes
Input current		
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	300 mA	300 mA
Power losses		
Power loss, typ.	2.1 W; incl. 1x20 mA TTY module	2.7 W; incl. 2x20mA TTY module
Memory		
Memory requirements per interface in memory card of S7-CPU	1 to 5 KB for parameters; 0 to 55 KB for message texts	1 to 5 KB for parameters; 0 to 55 KB for message texts; 0 to 64 KB for loadable drivers
Interfaces		
Number of interfaces	1; variable	2; variable
Interface physics, 20 mA (TTY)	Yes	Yes
Interface physics, RS 232C (V.24)	Yes	Yes
Interface physics, RS 422/RS 485 (X.27)	Yes	Yes
20 mA (TTY), cable length, shielded, max.	1 000 m; At 9600 bps	1 000 m; At 9600 bps
RS 232, cable length, shielded, max.	15 m; At 115200 bps	15 m; At 115200 bps
RS 422/485, cable length, shielded, max.	1 200 m; At 19200 bps	1 200 m; At 19200 bps
Point-to-point		
• Transmission rate, max.	115.2 kbit/s; Min. 300 bps	115.2 kbit/s; Min. 300 bps
• supported printers	HP-Deskjet, HP-Laserjet, IBM-Proprinter, user-defined	HP-Deskjet, HP-Laserjet, IBM-Proprinter, user-defined
Integrated protocol driver		
- 3964 (R)	Yes	Yes
- ASCII	Yes	Yes
- RK512	No	Yes
- Printer	Yes	Yes
- customer-specific drivers reloadable	No	No
Transmission speed, 20 mA (TTY)		
- with 3964 (R) protocol, max.	19.2 kbit/s	19.2 kbit/s
- with ASCII protocol, max.	19.2 kbit/s	19.2 kbit/s
- with printer driver, max.,	19.2 kbit/s	19.2 kbit/s
- with RK 512 protocol, max.	19.2 kbit/s	19.2 kbit/s

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 441-1, CP 441-2

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7441-1AA05-0AE0 CP 441-1, PTP-CONN., 1 CHANNEL	6ES7441-2AA05-0AE0 CP 441-2, PTP-CONN., 2 CHANNELS
Transmission speed, RS 422/485		
- with 3964 (R) protocol, max.	115.2 kbit/s	115.2 kbit/s
- with ASCII protocol, max.	115.2 kbit/s	115.2 kbit/s
- with printer driver, max.,	115.2 kbit/s	115.2 kbit/s
- with RK 512 protocol, max.		115.2 kbit/s
Transmission speed, RS232		
- with 3964 (R) protocol, max.	115.2 kbit/s	115.2 kbit/s
- with ASCII protocol, max.	115.2 kbit/s	115.2 kbit/s
- with printer driver, max.,	115.2 kbit/s	115.2 kbit/s
- with RK 512 protocol, max.		115.2 kbit/s
Ambient conditions		
Ambient temperature in operation		
• Min.	0 °C	0 °C
• max.	60 °C	60 °C
Relative humidity		
• Operation, max.	95 %	95 %
Dimensions		
Width	25 mm	25 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	210 mm	210 mm
Weights		
Weight, approx.	580 g; Interface modules: 80 g	580 g; Interface modules: 80 g

Ordering data

Article No.

Article No.

Communication module CP 441-1

With 1 variable interface for interface submodules; including configuration package on CD

6ES7441-1AA05-0AE0

Communication module CP 441-2

With 2 variable interfaces for interface submodules; including configuration package on CD

6ES7441-2AA05-0AE0

Interface submodules

RS 232C (V.24)

6ES7963-1AA10-0AA0

20 mA (TTY)

6ES7963-2AA10-0AA0

RS 422/485 (X.27)

6ES7963-3AA10-0AA0

RS 232 connecting cable

5 m

6ES7902-1AB00-0AA0

10 m

6ES7902-1AC00-0AA0

15 m

6ES7902-1AD00-0AA0

TTY connecting cable

5 m

6ES7902-2AB00-0AA0

10 m

6ES7902-2AC00-0AA0

50 m

6ES7902-2AG00-0AA0

RS 422/485 connecting cable

5 m

6ES7902-3AB00-0AA0

10 m

6ES7902-3AC00-0AA0

50 m

6ES7902-3AG00-0AA0

Loadable drivers for CP 441-2

Modbus master (RTU format)

- Single license
- Single license, without software or documentation

6ES7870-1AA01-0YA0

6ES7870-1AA01-0YA1

Modbus slave (RTU format)

- Single license
- Single license, without software or documentation

6ES7870-1AB01-0YA0

6ES7870-1AB01-0YA1

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

Loadable drivers for CP 441-2 and CP 341

1

Overview

- Drivers for Modbus protocol with RTU message format; communication as master or slave
- Downloadable onto CP 341 and CP 441-2 (6ES7441-2AA05-0AE0)

Technical specifications

Parameterization software	Loadable drivers for CP 441-2 and CP 341
Type of license	Simple license, copy license
Target system	SIMATIC CP 341, SIMATIC CP 441-2
Technical specifications	Modbus Master • Modbus protocol with RTU format • Master/slave coupling: SIMATIC S7 is master • Function codes implemented: 01, 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 08, 11, 12, 15, 16 • No V.24 control and signal lines • CRC polynomial: $x^{16} + x^{15} + x^2 + 1$ • Interfaces: TTY (20 mA); V.24 (RS 232 C); X.27 (RS 422/485) 2-wire or 4-wire • Receive mailbox specified on BRCV • Character delay time 3.5 characters or multiple thereof • Broadcast message possible • Transmission rate 300 bit/s up to 76800 bit/s (TTY up to 19200 bit/s) • Character frame • With/without RS 485 operation for 2-wire connections • With/without modem operation (ignore smudge characters) • Response monitoring time 100 ms to 25.5 s in steps of 100 ms • Factor for the character delay time 1-10 • Default setting of receive line when using the X.27 interface module Modbus slave • Modbus protocol with RTU format • Master/slave coupling: SIMATIC S7 is slave • Function codes implemented: 01, 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 08, 15, 16 • No V.24 control and signal line • CRC polynomial: $x^{16} + x^{15} + x^2 + 1$ • Interfaces: TTY (20 mA), V.24 (RS 232C), X.27 (RS 422/485) 2-wire or 4-wire • Communications FB 180, instance DB 180 (use of a multi-instance) • Conversion of the Modbus data address to S7 data areas. Data areas which can be processed: DB, bit memories, outputs, inputs, timers, counters • Character delay time 3.5 characters or multiple thereof

Adjustable parameters

- Transmission rate 300 bit/s up to 76800 bit/s (TTY up to 19200 bit/s)
- Character frame
- Slave address of CP (1 to 255)
- With/without RS 485 operation for 2-wire connection
- With/without modem operation (ignore smudge characters)
- Factor for the character delay time 1-10
- Number of work DB (for FB processing)
- Enabling of memory areas for writing by the master
- Default setting of receive line when using the X.27 interface module
- Conversion of Modbus addresses to S7 data areas

Ordering data

Article No.

Modbus Master V3.1

Task:

Communication via Modbus protocol with RTU format, SIMATIC S7 as master

Requirement:

CP 341 or CP 441-2; STEP 7 V4.02 and higher

Delivery package:

Driver program/documentation, English, German, French

Single license

6ES7870-1AA01-0YA0

Single license, without software and documentation

6ES7870-1AA01-0YA1

Modbus Slave V3.1

Task:

Communication via Modbus protocol with RTU format, SIMATIC S7 as slave

Requirement:

CP 341 or CP 441-2; STEP 7 V4.02 and higher

Delivery package:

Driver program/documentation, English, German, French

Single license

6ES7870-1AB01-0YA0

Single license, without software and documentation

6ES7870-1AB01-0YA1

SIMATIC Manual Collection

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0

Electronic manuals on DVD, multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC Based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC

SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2

Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 443-5 Basic

1

Overview

DP-M	DP-S	FMS	PG/OP	S7/S5	
		●	●	●	

- Connection of the S7-400 to PROFIBUS
- Communication services:
 - PG/OP communication
 - S7 communication
 - Open communication (SEND/RECEIVE)
 - PROFIBUS FMS
- Time synchronization
- Easy programming and configuration over PROFIBUS
- Cross-network programming device communication through S7 routing
- Can be easily integrated into the SIMATIC S7-400 system
- Modules can be replaced without the need for a PG
- SIMATIC H system operation for redundant S7 communication

Technical specifications

Article number	6GK7443-5FX02-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-5 Basic
Transmission rate	
Transfer rate	
• at the 1st interface acc. to PROFIBUS	9.6 kbit/s ... 12 Mbit/s
Interfaces	
Number of interfaces acc. to Industrial Ethernet	0
Number of electrical connections	
• at the 1st interface acc. to PROFIBUS	1
Type of electrical connection	
• at the 1st interface acc. to PROFIBUS	9-pin Sub-D socket (RS 485)
Supply voltage, current consumption, power loss	
Type of voltage of the supply voltage	DC
Supply voltage 1 from backplane bus	5 V
Supply voltage	5 V
Relative symmetrical tolerance for DC	
• at 5 V	5 %
Consumed current	
• from backplane bus for DC at 5 V typical	1 A
• from external supply voltage for DC at 24 V typical	1.2 A
Active power loss	5 W
Permitted ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature	
• during operation	0 ... 60 °C
• during storage	-40 ... +70 °C
• during transport	-40 ... +70 °C
Relative humidity at 25 °C without condensation during operation maximum	95 %
Protection class IP	IP20
Design, dimensions and weight	
Module format	Compact module S7-400 single width
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Net weight	0.65 kg
Product properties, functions, components general	
Number of units	
• per CPU maximum	14
• Note	depending on CPU type
Performance data open communication	
Number of possible connections for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks	
• maximum	32
Amount of data	
• as user data per connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	240 byte

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6GK7443-5FX02-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-5 Basic
Performance data FMS functions	
Number of possible connections for FMS connection maximum	48
Amount of data of the variables	
• for READ job maximum	237 byte
• for WRITE job maximum	233 byte
Number of variables	
• Configurable from server to FMS partner	512
• Loadable from server to FMS partner	2 640
Performance data S7 communication	
Number of possible connections for S7 communication	
• maximum	48
Performance data multi-protocol mode	
Number of possible connections of which 2 reserved for PG/OP communication with multi-protocol mode maximum	59
Performance data telecontrol	
Protocol is supported	
• TCP/IP	No
Product functions management, configuration	
Configuration software	
• required	STEP 7 V5.2 SP1 or higher and NCM S7 for PROFIBUS

Ordering data**Article No.**

CP 443-5 Basic communications processor	6GK7443-5FX02-0XE0
Communications processor for connection of S7-400 to PROFIBUS, FMS, open communication, PG/OP and S7 communication; with electronic manual on CD-ROM	
STEP 7 Version 5.5	
Target system: SIMATIC S7-300/-400, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC WinAC	
Requirements: Windows XP Prof., Windows 7 Professional/Ultimate	
Type of delivery: German, English, French, Spanish, Italian; including license key on USB stick, with electronic documentation	
• Floating License on DVD	6ES7810-4CC10-0YA5
• Rental license for 50 hours	6ES7810-4CC10-0YA6
• Software Update Service on DVD (requires current software version)	6ES7810-4BC01-0YX2
• Floating License upgrade 3.x/4.x/5.x to V5.4; on DVD	6ES7810-4CC10-0YE5
• Trial License STEP 7 V5.4; on DVD, operational for 14 days	6ES7810-4CC10-0YA7
Accessories	
PROFIBUS FastConnect RS 485 connection plugs	
With 90° cable outlet; insulation displacement technology, max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s	
• Without PG interface	6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0
• With PG interface	6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0
PROFIBUS IP20 bus connectors	
With connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS	
• Without PG interface	6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0
• With PG interface	6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
PROFIBUS bus terminal 12M	
Bus terminal for connection of PROFIBUS nodes at up to 12 Mbit/s with connecting cable	6GK1500-0AA10

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 443-5 Extended

1

Overview

DP-M	DP-S	FMS	PG/OP	S7/S5	
●			●	●	

- PROFIBUS DP master with electrical interface for connecting the SIMATIC S7-400 to PROFIBUS at up to 12 Mbit/s (including 45.45 Kbit/s)
- For setting up additional PROFIBUS DP lines
- Communication services:
 - PROFIBUS DP
 - PG/OP communication
 - S7 communication
 - Open communication (SEND/RECEIVE)
- Time synchronization
- Easy programming and configuration over PROFIBUS
- Cross-network programming device communication through S7 routing
- Can be easily integrated into the SIMATIC S7-400 system
- Module replacement without PG
- SIMATIC H system operation for redundant S7 communication or DP master communication
- Data record routing (PROFIBUS DP)
- Adding or modifying distributed I/O during operation

Technical specifications

Article number	6GK7443-5DX05-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-5 Extended
Transmission rate	
Transfer rate	
• at the 1st interface acc. to PROFIBUS	9.6 kbit/s ... 12 Mbit/s
Interfaces	
Number of interfaces acc. to Industrial Ethernet	0
Number of electrical connections	
• at the 1st interface acc. to PROFIBUS	1
Type of electrical connection	
• at the 1st interface acc. to PROFIBUS	9-pin Sub-D socket (RS 485)
Supply voltage, current consumption, power loss	
Type of voltage of the supply voltage	DC
Supply voltage 1 from backplane bus	5 V
Relative symmetrical tolerance for DC	
• at 5 V	5 %
Consumed current	
• from backplane bus for DC at 5 V typical	0.6 A
Active power loss	3 W
Permitted ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature	
• during operation	0 ... 60 °C
• during storage	-40 ... +70 °C
• during transport	-40 ... +70 °C
Relative humidity at 25 °C without condensation during operation maximum	95 %
Protection class IP	IP20
Design, dimensions and weight	
Module format	Compact module S7-400 single width
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Net weight	0.65 kg
Product properties, functions, components general	
Number of units	
• per CPU maximum	14
• Note	The number of CPs that can be operated as DP masters depends on the number of CP 443-1 Advanced processors operating in the S7-400 station as PROFINET IO controllers. Up to 10 CPs can be operated in total: up to 4 as PROFINET IO controllers (CP 443-1 Advanced); up to 10 as DP masters (CP 443-5 Extended)

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6GK7443-5DX05-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-5 Extended
Performance data open communication	
Number of possible connections for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks	
• maximum	32
Amount of data	
• as user data per connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	240 byte
Performance data PROFIBUS DP	
Service as DP master	
• DPV1	Yes
Number of DP slaves on DP master usable	125
Amount of data	
• of the address area of the inputs as DP master total	4 096 byte
• of the address area of the outputs as DP master total	4 096 byte
• of the address area of the inputs per DP slave	244 byte
• of the address area of the outputs per DP slave	244 byte
Performance data S7 communication	
Number of possible connections for S7 communication	
• maximum	48
Performance data multi-protocol mode	
Number of active connections with multi-protocol mode	
• without DP maximum	59
• with DP maximum	54
Performance data telecontrol	
Protocol is supported	
• TCP/IP	No
Product functions management, configuration	
Configuration software	
• required	STEP 7 V5.4 SP4 or higher / STEP 7 Professional V12 (TIA Portal) or higher

Ordering data
Article No.
CP 443-5 Extended communications processor

for connection of the SIMATIC S7-400 to PROFIBUS

Extended version for PROFIBUS DP; with electronic manual on CD-ROM

6GK7443-5DX05-0XE0
Accessories
PROFIBUS FastConnect connection plug RS 485

With 90° cable outlet; insulation displacement technology, max. transmission rate 12 Mbit/s

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6ES7972-0BA52-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB52-0XA0
PROFIBUS bus connector IP20

With connection to PPI, MPI, PROFIBUS

- Without PG interface
- With PG interface

6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0
6ES7972-0BB12-0XA0
PROFIBUS FC Standard Cable

2-core bus cable, shielded, special design for fast mounting, delivery unit: max. 1000 m, minimum order 20 m, sold by the meter

6XV1830-0EH10
PROFIBUS bus terminal 12M

Bus terminal for connection of PROFIBUS nodes up to 12 Mbps with connecting cable

6GK1500-0AA10

Note:

You can find order information for software for communication with PC systems in the IK PI catalog.

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 443-1**Overview**

ISO	TCP/ UDP	PN	MRP	IT	IP-R	PG/OP	S7/S5
●	●	●	●	●		●	●

Communications processor for connecting a SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet networks, also as PROFINET IO controller or in SIMATIC H systems.

The CP supports:

- PG/OP communication
- S7 communication
- Open communication (SEND/RECEIVE)
- PROFINET communication
- IT communication

The communications processor can also be used for redundant S7 communication in SIMATIC H systems and for fail-safe applications (PROFIsafe) in connection with an S7-400 F-CPU.

Technical specifications

Article number	6GK7443-1EX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1
Transmission rate	
Transfer rate	
• at the 1st interface	10 ... 100 Mbit/s
Interfaces	
Number of interfaces acc. to Industrial Ethernet	2
Number of electrical connections	
• at the 1st interface acc. to Industrial Ethernet	2
Type of electrical connection	
• at the 1st interface acc. to Industrial Ethernet	RJ45 port
design of the removable storage C-PLUG	No
Supply voltage, current consumption, power loss	
Type of voltage of the supply voltage	DC
Supply voltage 1 from backplane bus	5 V
Relative symmetrical tolerance for DC	
• at 5 V	5 %
Consumed current	
• from backplane bus for DC at 5 V typical	1.4 A
Active power loss	7.25 W
Permitted ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature	
• during operation	0 ... 60 °C
• during storage	-40 ... +70 °C
• during transport	-40 ... +70 °C
Relative humidity at 25 °C without condensation during operation maximum	95 %
Protection class IP	IP20
Design, dimensions and weight	
Module format	Compact module S7-400 single width
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Net weight	0.7 kg
Product properties, functions, components general	
Number of units	
• per CPU maximum	14
• Note	max. 4 as PN IO ctrl.

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6GK7443-1EX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1
Performance data open communication	
Number of possible connections for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks	
• maximum	64
Amount of data	
• as user data per ISO connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data per ISO on TCP connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data per TCP connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data per UDP connection for open IE communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	2 Kibyte
Number of possible connections for open communication	
• by means of T blocks maximum	64
Amount of data	
• as user data per ISO on TCP connection for open communication by means of T blocks maximum	1 452 byte
Performance data S7 communication	
Number of possible connections for S7 communication	
• maximum	128
• with PG connections maximum	2
• Note	when using several CPUs
Performance data multi-protocol mode	
Number of active connections with multi-protocol mode	128
Performance data PROFINET communication as PN IO-Controller	
Product function PROFINET IO controller	Yes
Number of PN IO devices on PROFINET IO controller usable total	128
Number of PN IO IRT devices on PROFINET IO controller usable	64
Number of external PN IO lines with PROFINET per rack	4
Amount of data	
• as user data for input variables as PROFINET IO controller maximum	4 Kibyte
• as user data for input variables as PROFINET IO controller maximum	4 Kibyte
• as user data for input variables per PN IO device as PROFINET IO controller maximum	1 433 byte
• as user data for output variables per PN IO device as PROFINET IO controller maximum	1 433 byte
• as user data for input variables per PN IO device for each sub-module as PROFINET IO controller maximum	240 byte
• as user data for output variables per PN IO device for each sub-module as PROFINET IO controller maximum	240 byte

Article number	6GK7443-1EX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1
Performance data telecontrol	
Protocol is supported	
• TCP/IP	Yes
Product functions management, configuration	
Product function MIB support	Yes
Protocol is supported	
• SNMP v1	Yes
• DCP	Yes
• LLDP	Yes
Configuration software	
• required	STEP 7 V5.5 SP3 or higher / STEP 7 Professional V12 (TIA Portal) or higher
Product functions Diagnosis	
Product function Web-based diagnostics	Yes
Product functions switch	
Product feature Switch	Yes
Product function	
• switch-managed	No
• with IRT PROFINET IO switch	Yes
• Configuration with STEP 7	Yes
Product functions Redundancy	
Product function	
• Ring redundancy	Yes
• Redundancy manager	Yes
Protocol is supported	Yes
Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP)	
Product functions Security	
Product function	
• password protection for Web applications	No
• ACL - IP-based	Yes
• ACL - IP-based for PLC/routing	No
• switch-off of non-required services	Yes
• Blocking of communication via physical ports	Yes
• log file for unauthorized access	No
Product functions Time	
Product function SICLOCK support	Yes
Product function pass on time synchronization	Yes
Protocol is supported NTP	Yes

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 443-1

Ordering data

Article No.

Article No.

CP 443-1

communications processor

For connecting SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet through TCP/IP, ISO and UDP; PROFINET IO Controller, MRP; integrated real-time switch ERTEC with two ports; 2 x RJ45 interface; S7 communication, open communication (SEND/RECEIVE) with FETCH/WRITE, with and without RFC 1006, DHCP, SNMP V2, diagnostics, multicast, access protection over IP access list, initialization over LAN 10/100 Mbps with electronic manual on DVD

6GK7443-1EX30-0XE0

IE FC TP Standard Cable GP 2 x 2 (Type A)

4-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC Outlet RJ45/IE FC RJ45 Plug; PROFINET-compatible; with UL approval; sold by the meter; max. order length 1000 m, minimum order 20 m

6XV1840-2AH10

IE FC TP Standard Cable GP 4 x 2

8-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC RJ45 modular outlet for universal applications; with UL approval; sold by the meter; max. order quantity 1000 m, minimum order 20 m

6XV1870-2E

- AWG22, for connection to IE FC RJ45 Modular Outlet
- AWG24, for connection to IE FC RJ45 Plug 4 x 2

6XV1878-2A

IE FC Stripping Tool

Pre-adjusted stripping tool for fast stripping of the Industrial Ethernet FC cables

6GK1901-1GA00

SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch

Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports and two FO ports

6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3

Industrial Ethernet Switch SCALANCE X308-2

2 x 1000 Mbps multimode fiber-optic cable ports (SC sockets), 1 x 10/100/1000 Mbps RJ45 port, 7 x 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports; for glass fiber-optic cable (multimode) up to max. 750 m

6GK5308-2FL00-2AA3

Accessories

IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 2 x 2

RJ45 plug-in connector for Industrial Ethernet with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables; with 180° cable outlet; for network components and CPs/CPUs with Industrial Ethernet interface

- 1 pack = 1 unit
- 1 pack = 10 units
- 1 pack = 50 units

6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0

IE FC RJ45 Plug 4 x 2

RJ45 plug connector for Industrial Ethernet (10/100/1000 Mbps) with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables; 180° cable outlet; for network components and CPs/CPUs with Industrial Ethernet interface

- 1 pack = 1 unit
- 1 pack = 10 units
- 1 pack = 50 units

6GK1901-1BB11-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB11-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB11-2AE0

Note:

You'll find ordering data for software for communication to PC systems in catalog IK PI.

Overview



ISO	TCP/ UDP	PN	MRP	IT	IP-R	PG/OP	S7/S5
●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

Communications processor for connecting a SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet networks, also as PROFINET IO controller or in SIMATIC H systems.

The CP supports:

- PG/OP communication
- S7 communication
- Open communication (SEND/RECEIVE)
- PROFINET communication
- IT communication
- Security functionality, firewall and VPN

The communications processor can also be used for redundant S7 communication in SIMATIC H systems and for fail-safe applications (PROFIsafe) in connection with an S7-400 F-CPU. In addition, the CP 443-1 Advanced provides e-mail functions and user-created Web pages, offering ideal support for maintenance and quality assurance. The Internet functions such as FTP even allow connection to the most diverse PC-based systems. This CP is therefore the bridge between the field level and the management level for the S7-400. The CP 443-1 Advanced connects seamlessly to the security structures of the office and IT worlds.

Technical specifications

Article number	6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 Advanced
Transmission rate	
Transfer rate	
• at the 1st interface	10 ... 1 000 Mbit/s
• at the 2nd interface	10 ... 100 Mbit/s
Interfaces	
Number of interfaces acc. to Industrial Ethernet	5
Number of electrical connections	
• at the 1st interface acc. to Industrial Ethernet	1
• at the 2nd interface acc. to Industrial Ethernet	4
Type of electrical connection	
• at the 1st interface acc. to Industrial Ethernet	RJ45 port
• at the 2nd interface acc. to Industrial Ethernet	RJ45 port
design of the removable storage C-PLUG	Yes
Supply voltage, current consumption, power loss	
Type of voltage of the supply voltage	DC
Supply voltage 1 from backplane bus	5 V
Relative symmetrical tolerance for DC	
• at 5 V	5 %
Consumed current	
• from backplane bus for DC at 5 V typical	1.8 A
Active power loss	9 W
Permitted ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature	
• during operation	0 ... 60 °C
• during storage	-40 ... +70 °C
• during transport	-40 ... +70 °C
Relative humidity at 25 °C without condensation during operation maximum	95 %
Protection class IP	IP20
Design, dimensions and weight	
Module format	Compact module S7-400 single width
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Net weight	0.7 kg
Product properties, functions, components general	
Number of units	
• per CPU maximum	14
• Note	max. 4 as PN IO ctrl.

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 443-1 Advanced

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 Advanced
Performance data open communication	
Number of possible connections for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks	
• maximum	64
Amount of data	
• as user data per ISO connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data per ISO on TCP connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data per TCP connection for open communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data per UDP connection for open IE communication by means of SEND/RECEIVE blocks maximum	2 Kibyte
Number of possible connections for open communication	
• by means of T blocks maximum	64
Amount of data	
• as user data per ISO on TCP connection for open communication by means of T blocks maximum	1 452 byte
Performance data S7 communication	
Number of possible connections for S7 communication	
• maximum	128
• with PG connections maximum	2
• Note	when using several CPUs
Performance data multi-protocol mode	
Number of active connections with multi-protocol mode	128
Performance data IT functions	
Number of possible connections	
• as client by means of FTP maximum	20
• as server by means of FTP maximum	10
• as server by means of HTTP maximum	4
• as e-mail client maximum	1
Amount of data as user data for email maximum	8 Kibyte
Storage capacity of the user memory	
• as flash memory file system	30 Mibyte
• as RAM	16 Mibyte
• additionally buffered as RAM via central backup battery	512 Kibyte
Number of possible write cycles of the flash memory cells	100 000
Performance data PROFINET communication as PN IO-Controller	
Product function PROFINET IO controller	Yes
Number of PN IO devices on PROFINET IO controller usable total	128
Number of PN IO IRT devices on PROFINET IO controller usable	64
Number of external PN IO lines with PROFINET per rack	4

Article number	6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 Advanced
Amount of data	
• as user data for input variables as PROFINET IO controller maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data for input variables as PROFINET IO controller maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data for input variables per PN IO device as PROFINET IO controller maximum	1 433 byte
• as user data for output variables per PN IO device as PROFINET IO controller maximum	1 433 byte
• as user data for input variables per PN IO device for each sub-module as PROFINET IO controller maximum	240 byte
• as user data for output variables per PN IO device for each sub-module as PROFINET IO controller maximum	240 byte
Performance data PROFINET CBA	
Number of remote connection partners with PROFINET CBA	64
Number of connections with PROFINET CBA total	600
Amount of data	
• as user data for digital inputs with PROFINET CBA maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data for digital outputs with PROFINET CBA maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data for arrays and data types in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA maximum	8 Kibyte
• as user data for arrays and data types with PROFINET CBA with cyclical transfer maximum	250 byte
• as user data for arrays and data types with PROFINET CBA in the case of local interconnection maximum	2 400 byte
Performance data PROFINET CBA remote connection with acyclic transmission	
Refresh time of the remote interconnections in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA	100 ms
Number of remote connections to input variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA maximum	150
Number of remote connections to output variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA maximum	150
Amount of data	
• as user data for remote interconnections with input variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA	8 Kibyte
• as user data for remote interconnections with output variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA	8 Kibyte
Performance data PROFINET CBA remote connection with cyclic transmission	
Refresh time of the remote interconnections with PROFINET CBA with cyclical transfer	10 ms

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 Advanced
Number of remote connections to input variables with PROFINET CBA with cyclical transfer maximum	250
Number of remote connections to output variables with PROFINET CBA with cyclical transfer maximum	250
Amount of data	
• as user data for remote interconnections with input variables with PROFINET CBA with cyclical transfer maximum	2 000 byte
• as user data for remote interconnections with output variables with PROFINET CBA with cyclical transfer maximum	2 000 byte
Performance data PROFINET CBA HMI variables via PROFINET acyclic	
Number of connectable HMI stations for HMI variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA	3
Refresh time of the HMI variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA	500 ms
Number of HMI variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA maximum	200
Amount of data as user data for HMI variables in the case of acyclic transmission with PROFINET CBA maximum	8 Kibyte
Performance data PROFINET CBA device-internal connections	
Number of internal connections with PROFINET CBA maximum	300
Amount of data of the internal connections with PROFINET CBA maximum	2 400 byte
Performance data PROFINET CBA connections to constants	
Number of connections with constants with PROFINET CBA maximum	500
Amount of data as user data for interconnections with constants with PROFINET CBA maximum	4 000 byte
Performance data PROFINET CBA PROFIBUS proxy functionality	
Product function with PROFINET CBA PROFIBUS proxy functionality	No
Performance data telecontrol	
Protocol is supported	
• TCP/IP	Yes

Article number	6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 Advanced
Product functions management, configuration	
Product function MIB support	Yes
Protocol is supported	
• SNMP v1	Yes
• SNMP v3	Yes
• DCP	Yes
• LLDP	Yes
Configuration software	
• required	STEP 7 V5.5 SP3 or higher / STEP 7 Professional V12 (TIA Portal) or higher
• for PROFINET CBA required	SIMATIC iMap V3.0 SP1 and higher
Product functions Diagnosis	
Product function Web-based diagnostics	Yes
Product functions switch	
Product feature Switch	Yes
Product function	
• switch-managed	No
• with IRT PROFINET IO switch	Yes
• Configuration with STEP 7	Yes
Product functions Redundancy	
Product function	
• Ring redundancy	Yes
• Redundancy manager	Yes
Protocol is supported Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP)	Yes
Product functions Security	
Firewall version	stateful inspection
Product function with VPN connection	IPSec
Type of encryption algorithms with VPN connection	AES-256, AES-192, AES-128, 3DES-168, DES-56
Type of authentication procedure with VPN connection	Preshared key (PSK), X.509v3 certificates
Type of hashing algorithms with VPN connection	MD5, SHA-1
Number of possible connections with VPN connection	32
Product function	
• password protection for Web applications	Yes
• ACL - IP-based	Yes
• ACL - IP-based for PLC/routing	Yes
• switch-off of non-required services	Yes
• Blocking of communication via physical ports	Yes
• log file for unauthorized access	No
Product functions Time	
Product function SICLOCK support	Yes
Product function pass on time synchronization	Yes
Protocol is supported NTP	Yes

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Communication

CP 443-1 Advanced

1

Ordering data**Article No.****Article No.****Communications processor
CP 443-1 Advanced**

for connecting the SIMATIC S7-400 CPU to Industrial Ethernet:
 1 x 10/100/1000 Mbit/s;
 4 x 10/100 Mbit/s (IE SWITCH);
 RJ45 ports; ISO; TCP; UDP;
 PROFINET IO controller,
 S7 communication;
 open communication
 (SEND/RECEIVE); S7 routing;
 IP configuration via DHCP/block;
 IP Access Control List; time
 synchronization; expanded web
 diagnostics; Fast Startup;
 PROFinergy support;
 IP routing; FTP; web server;
 e-mail; PROFINET CBA
 • With security functionality
 (firewall and VPN)

6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0**Accessories****IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 2 x 2**

RJ45 plug-in connector for Industrial Ethernet with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables; with 180° cable outlet; for network components and CPUs/CPUs with Industrial Ethernet interface

- 1 pack = 1 unit
- 1 pack = 10 units
- 1 pack = 50 units

6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0

IE FC RJ45 Plug 4 x 2

RJ45 plug connector for Industrial Ethernet (10/100/1000 Mbit/s) with a sturdy metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables; 180° cable outlet; for network components and CPUs/CPUs with Industrial Ethernet interface

- 1 pack = 1 unit
- 1 pack = 10 units
- 1 pack = 50 units

6GK1901-1BB11-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB11-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB11-2AE0

**IE FC TP Standard Cable GP 2 x 2
(Type A)**

4-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC Outlet RJ45/IE FC RJ45 Plug; PROFINET-compatible; with UL approval; sold by the meter; max. length 1000 m, minimum order quantity 20 m

6XV1840-2AH10**IE FC TP Standard Cable GP 4 x 2**

8-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC RJ45 Modular Outlet for universal applications; with UL approval; sold by the meter; max. quantity 1000 m, minimum order 20 m

6XV1870-2E

- AWG22, for connection to IE FC RJ45 Modular Outlet
- AWG24, for connection to IE FC RJ45 Plug 4 x 2

6XV1878-2A**IE FC Stripping Tool**

Preadjusted stripping tool for fast stripping of the Industrial Ethernet FC cables

6GK1901-1GA00**Industrial Ethernet Switch
SCALANCE X204-2**

Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 ports and two FO ports

6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3**Industrial Ethernet Switch
SCALANCE X308-2**

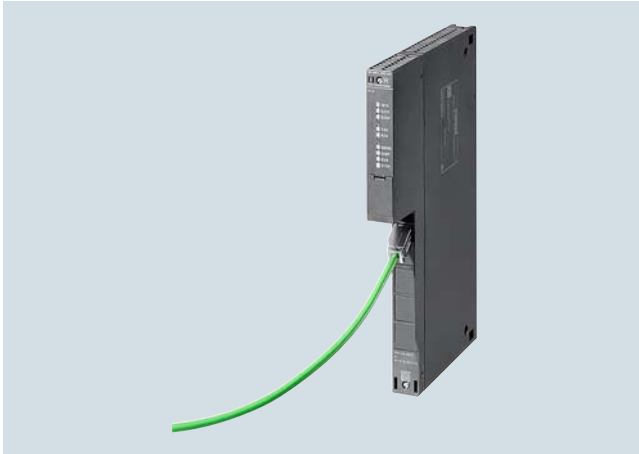
2 x 1000 Mbit/s multimode fiber-optic cable ports (SC sockets), 1 x 10/100/1000 Mbit/s RJ45 port, 7 x 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 ports; for glass fiber-optic cable (multimode) up to max. 750 m

6GK5308-2FL00-2AA3

Note:

You can find order information for software for communication with PC systems in the IK PI catalog.

Overview



CP 443-1 OPC UA communications processor

Communications processor for connecting a SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet networks via OPC UA mechanisms.

The CP 443-1 OPC UA supports:

- PG/OP communication
- Communication via OPC UA as OPC UA server and/or OPC UA client for exchanging process data (data access)

The CP makes it possible to provide data for, or receive data from, other stations via a standardized OPC UA interface direct from the SIMATIC S7-400 controller. The CP can be used here as an OPC UA server and/or an OPC UA client. Communication as an OPC UA client takes place via user blocks standardized by the PLCopen organization. For more detailed information, see also:

www.plcopen.org/pages/tc4_communication/index.htm

It can be used in SIMATIC S7-400 H systems as well as in standard SIMATIC S7-400 systems, and for fail-safe applications (PROFIsafe) in connection with an S7-400 F-CPU.

Technical specifications

Article number	6GK7443-1UX00-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 OPC UA
Transmission rate	
Transfer rate	
• for Industrial Ethernet	10 ... 1 000 Mbit/s
Interfaces	
Number of interfaces acc. to Industrial Ethernet	1
Type of electrical connection	
• of Industrial Ethernet interface	RJ45 port
Supply voltage, current consumption, power loss	
Type of voltage of the supply voltage	DC
Supply voltage 1 from backplane bus	5 V
Relative symmetrical tolerance at DC	
• at 5 V	5 %
Consumed current	
• from backplane bus at DC at 5 V typical	1.3 A
Power loss [W]	6.5 W
Permitted ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature	
• during operation	0 ... 60 °C
• during storage	-40 ... +70 °C
• during transport	-40 ... +70 °C
Relative humidity at 25 °C without condensation during operation maximum	95 %
Protection class IP	IP20

Article number	6GK7443-1UX00-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 OPC UA
Design, dimensions and weight	
Module format	Compact module S7-400 single width
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	210 mm
Net weight	0.7 kg
Product properties, functions, components general	
Number of units	
• per CPU maximum	1
Performance data S7 communication	
Number of possible connections for S7 communication	
• with PG connections maximum	2
Performance data as OPC UA server	
Protocol is supported OPC UA Server	Yes
Number of possible connections to OPC UA clients maximum	10
Number of variables (items) maximum	64 000
Storage capacity for variables (items) in summary	64 000 byte
Number of monitorings (subscriptions)	
• per connection maximum permissible	5
Number of variables (items)	
• per monitoring (subscriptions) maximum	900
Memory capacity for monitored variables (items)	45 000 byte

SIMATIC S7-400 Advanced Controller

Communication

CP 443-1 OPC UA

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6GK7443-1UX00-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 OPC UA
Performance data as OPC UA client	
Protocol is supported OPC UA Client	Yes
Number of possible connections for OPC UA server maximum	5
Number of variables (items) over all connections reading/writing maximum	10 000
Protocol is supported	
• SNMP v1	Yes
• SNMP v3	Yes

Article number	6GK7443-1UX00-0XE0
Product type designation	CP 443-1 OPC UA
Product functions Diagnosis	
Product function Web-based diagnostics	Yes
Product functions Security	
Product function	
• password protection for Web applications	Yes
• encrypted data transmission	Yes
• switch-off of non-required services	Yes
• log file for unauthorized access	Yes
Product functions Time	
Protocol is supported	
• NTP	Yes
• NTP (secure)	Yes

Ordering data

Article No.

CP 443-1 OPC UA communication processor

For connecting SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet through TCP/IP, ISO and UDP; PROFINET IO Controller, MRP; integrated real-time switch ERTEC with two ports; 2 x RJ45 interface; S7 communication, open communication (SEND/RECEIVE) with FETCH/WRITE, with and without RFC 1006, DHCP, SNMP V2, diagnostics, multicast, access protection over IP access list, initialization over LAN 10/100 Mbps with electronic manual on DVD

6GK7443-1UX00-0XE0

Accessories

IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 2 x 2

RJ45 plug-in connector for Industrial Ethernet with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables; with 180° cable outlet; for network components and CPs/CPUs with Industrial Ethernet interface

- 1 pack = 1 unit
- 1 pack = 10 units
- 1 pack = 50 units

6GK1901-1BB10-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB10-2AE0

IE FC RJ45 Plug 4 x 2

RJ45 plug connector for Industrial Ethernet (10/100/1000 Mbps) with a rugged metal enclosure and integrated insulation displacement contacts for connecting Industrial Ethernet FC installation cables; 180° cable outlet; for network components and CPs/CPUs with Industrial Ethernet interface

- 1 pack = 1 unit
- 1 pack = 10 units
- 1 pack = 50 units

6GK1901-1BB11-2AA0
6GK1901-1BB11-2AB0
6GK1901-1BB11-2AE0

Article No.

IE FC TP Standard Cable GP 2 x 2 (Type A)

4-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC Outlet RJ45/IE FC RJ45 Plug; PROFINET-compatible; with UL approval; sold by the meter; max. order length 1000 m, minimum order 20 m

6XV1840-2AH10

IE FC TP Standard Cable GP 4 x 2

8-core, shielded TP installation cable for connection to IE FC RJ45 modular outlet for universal applications; with UL approval; sold by the meter; max. order quantity 1000 m, minimum order 20 m

- AWG22, for connection to IE FC RJ45 Modular Outlet
- AWG24, for connection to IE FC RJ45 Plug 4 x 2

6XV1870-2E

6XV1878-2A

IE FC Stripping Tool

Pre-adjusted stripping tool for fast stripping of the Industrial Ethernet FC cables

6GK1901-1GA00

SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch

Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports and two FO ports

6GK5204-2BB10-2AA3

Industrial Ethernet Switch SCALANCE X308-2

2 x 1000 Mbit/s multimode fiber-optic cable ports (SC sockets), 1 x 10/100/1000 Mbps RJ45 port, 7 x 10/100 Mbps RJ45 ports; for glass fiber-optic cable (multimode) up to max. 750 m

6GK5308-2FL00-2AA3

More information

You can find more information on the topic online at:
www.siemens.com/simatic-classic-s7-opcua

Overview TIM 4R-IE for WAN and Ethernet



- SINAUT communications module TIM with four interfaces for SIMATIC S7-300 or as self-contained unit for the S7-400 for use in the wide area network (WAN)
- For universal use in a SINAUT station, node station and control center
- Internet communication via integrated MSC-VPN tunnel with direct connection to DSL router or operation via IPsec VPN with additional SIMATIC NET components
- Wireless communication via GPRS router, GPRS modem, or radio devices
- Wired communication via Ethernet, DSL, dialup modems or dedicated line modem
- Complete migration of existing wireless, dedicated line and dial-up technology to IP-based network
- Message frame memory for complete recording of data and support of redundant communication paths
- Simple configuration and operation without specialist IT knowledge

For further information, see chapter 5, page 5/223.

Overview TIM 4R-IE DNP3



In a station for the S7-CPU, the communication module TIM 4R-IE DNP3 (TeleControl Interface Module) handles the data exchange with the assigned SIMATIC PCS7 TeleControl V8.0 master system using the open DNP3 protocol. In addition, the V3.0 module now also supports master and node functionality.

- With the double-width S7-300 housing, the module can be fully integrated into the S7-300 system
- Can be connected as a stand-alone module to a SIMATIC S7-400 and SIMATIC S7-400 H System
- Two RS 232/RS 485 interfaces support connection of an external modem for data transmission via a conventional WAN or of a Modbus RTU slave to an S7-300 system
- The module has two RJ45 interfaces for data transmission via IP-based networks
- By using physically separate connection paths, the module permits media redundancy without loss of data during the switchover

For further information, see chapter 5, page 5/228.

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 communication

1

SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1**Overview**

ISO	TCP/ UDP	PN	MRP	IT	IP-R	PG/OP	S7/S5
●	●	●	●	●		●	●

- Connection of SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet
 - 2 x RJ45 interface for 10/100 Mbit/s full/half-duplex connection with auto-sensing/auto-negotiation and auto-crossover function
 - Integrated real-time switch ERTEC with two ports
 - Multi-protocol operation for ISO, TCP/IP, UDP and PROFINET IO protocols
 - Adjustable Keep Alive function
- Communication services:
 - Open communication (ISO, TCP/IP, and UDP)
 - PROFINET IO Controller with real-time properties RT and IRT
 - PG/OP communication: Cross-network by means of S7 routing
 - S7 communication
- Media redundancy (MRP); the CP supports the media redundancy procedure MRP within an Ethernet network with ring topology.
- Multicast for UDP
- Access protection via configurable access list
- Support for fail-safe programmable controllers together with SIMATIC S7-400 CPU 416F-3PN/DP
- Module replacement without PG
- Operation in the SIMATIC H system for redundant S7-communication
- Configuration with STEP 7
- Diagnostics possibilities in STEP 7 and via web browser
- Automatic CPU-clock setting via Industrial Ethernet with NTP or SIMATIC procedure
- Integration of network management systems via SNMP (MIB II diagnostic information)

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

SIPLUS CP 443-1	
Article No.	6AG1 443-1EX20-4XE0
Article number based on	6GK7 443-1EX20-0XE0
Ambient temperature range	0 ... +60 °C
Conformal coating	Coating of the printed circuit boards and the electronic components
Technical data	The technical data of the standard product applies, except for the ambient conditions
Ambient conditions	
Relative humidity	100 %, condensation/frost permissible. No commissioning if condensation present.
Biologically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3B2 mold spores, fungal spores (excluding fauna). The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Chemically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3C4 incl. salt spray in accordance with EN60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Mechanically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Air pressure (depending on the highest positive temperature range specified)	1080 ... 795 hPa (-1000 ... +2000 m) see ambient temperature range 795 ... 658 hPa (+2000 ... +3500 m) derating 10 K 658 ... 540 hPa (+3500 ... +5000 m) derating 20 K

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 communication

SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1

1

Ordering data	Article No.	Article No.
SIPLUS CP 443-1 communications processor For connecting SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet through TCP/IP, ISO and UDP; PROFINET IO Controller, MRP; integrated real-time switch ERTEC with two ports; 2 x RJ-45 interface; S7 communication, open communication (SEND/RECEIVE) with FETCH/WRITE, with and without RFC 1006, DHCP, SNMP V2, diagnostics, multicast, access protection over IP access list, initialization over LAN 10/100 Mbit/s with electronic manual on DVD Exposure to media	6AG1443-1EX20-4XE0	Accessories SIPLUS SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 ports and two FO ports Extended temperature range and exposure to media 6AG1204-2BB10-4AA3 IE FC RJ45 Plug 180 180° cable outlet; 1 unit Extended temperature range and exposure to media 6AG1901-1BB10-7AA0 Further accessories See SIMATIC CP 443-1, page 1/102

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 communication

SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1 Advanced

1

Overview

ISO	TCP/UDP	PN	MRP	IT	IP-R	PG/OP	S7/S5
●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- Connection of SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet
 - Multi-protocol operation for ISO, TCP/IP, UDP and PROFINET IO protocols
 - Adjustable keep-alive function
- Two separate interfaces (integrated network separation):
 - Gigabit interface with one RJ45 port with 10/100/1 000 Mbit/s, full/half-duplex with auto-sensing capability
 - PROFINET interface with four RJ45 ports with 10/100 Mbit/s, full/half duplex with autosensing and autocrossover functionality via integrated 4-port switch
- Communication services via both interfaces
 - Open communication (ISO, TCP/IP and UDP), multicast with UDP, including routing between both interfaces
 - PG/OP communication:
 - Cross-network by means of S7 routing
 - S7 communication (client, server, multiplexing) including routing between both interfaces
 - IT communication:
 - HTTP communication supports access to process data via own Web pages;
 - e-mail client function, sending of e-mails with authentication directly from user program;
 - FTP communication supports program-controlled FTP client communication;
 - access to data blocks through FTP server
- Communication services via PROFINET interface
 - PROFINET IO controller with real-time properties (RT and IRT)
 - PROFINET CBA
 - IP address assignment via DHCP, simple PC tool or via the user program (e.g. HMI)
 - Support of the prioritized startup of PROFINET IO devices
 - Configuration with STEP 7
- Media redundancy (MRP); the CP supports the media redundancy procedure MRP within an Ethernet network with ring topology.
- Access protection by means of configurable IP access list
- Module replacement without programming device; all information is stored on the C-PLUG (also file system for IT functions)

- Extensive diagnostic functions for all modules in the rack
- Integration into network management systems through the support of SNMP V1 MIB-II
- Operation in the SIMATIC H system for redundant S7-communication
- Operation in fail-safe applications (PROFIsafe) in combination with SIMATIC S7-400 CPU 416F

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

SIPLUS CP 443-1 Advanced	
Article No.	6AG1443-1GX30-4XE0
Article number based on	6GK7443-1GX30-0XE0
Ambient temperature range	0 ... +60 °C
Conformal coating	Coating of the printed circuit boards and the electronic components
Technical data	The technical data of the standard product applies, except for the ambient conditions
Ambient conditions	
Relative humidity	100 %, condensation/frost permissible. No commissioning if condensation present.
Biologically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3B2 mold and fungal spores (excluding fauna). The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Chemically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3C4 incl. salt spray in accordance with EN60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Mechanically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Air pressure (depending on the highest positive temperature range specified)	1 080 ... 795 hPa (-1 000 ... +2 000 m) see ambient temperature range 795 ... 658 hPa (+2 000 ... +3 500 m) derating 10 K 658 ... 540 hPa (+3 500 ... +5 000 m) derating 20 K

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 communication

SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1 Advanced

1

Ordering data	Article No.	Article No.
SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-1 Advanced communications processor For the connection of SIMATIC S7-400 to Industrial Ethernet; PROFINET IO Controller with RT and IRT, MRP, PROFINET CBA, TCP/IP, ISO and UDP; S7 communication, open communication (SEND/RECEIVE) with FETCH/WRITE, with and without RFC 1006, diagnostic expansions, multicast, clock synchronization via SIMATIC procedure or NTP, access protection via IP access list, FTP client/server, HTTP server, HTML diagnostics, SNMP, DHCP, e-mail, data storage on C-PLUG; PROFINET interface: 4 x RJ-45 (10/100 Mbit/s) over switch; Gigabit interface: 1 x RJ45 (10/100/1000 Mbit/s) Exposure to media	6AG1443-1GX30-4XE0	Accessories SIPLUS SCALANCE X204-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch Industrial Ethernet Switches with integral SNMP access, Web diagnostics, copper cable diagnostics and PROFINET diagnostics for configuring line, star and ring topologies; four 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 ports and two FO ports Extended temperature range and exposure to media 6AG1204-2BB10-4AA3 SIPLUS SCALANCE X308-2 Industrial Ethernet Switch 2 x 1000 Mbit/s multimode fiber-optic ports (SC sockets), 1 x 10/100/1000 Mbit/s RJ45 port, 7 x 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 ports; for glass fiber-optic cable (multimode) up to max. 750 m Exposure to media 6AG1308-2FL00-4AA3 SIPLUS NET RJ45 Plug 180 180° cable outlet; 1 unit Extended temperature range and exposure to media 6AG1901-1BB10-7AA0 SIPLUS NET RJ45 Plug 90 90° cable outlet; 1 unit Extended temperature range and exposure to media 6AG1901-1BB20-7AA0 Further accessories See SIMATIC CP 443-1 Advanced, page 1/106

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 communication

SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-5 Extended

1

Overview

DP-M	DP-S	FMS	PG/OP	S7/S5	
●			●	●	

- DP-V1 master connection of the S7-400 to PROFIBUS
- For setting up additional PROFIBUS DP lines
- Communication services:
 - PROFIBUS DP
 - PG/OP communication
 - S7 communication
 - S5-compatible communication (SEND/RECEIVE)
- Clock synchronization
- Easy programming and configuration over PROFIBUS
- Cross-network programming device communication through S7 routing
- Can be easily integrated into the SIMATIC S7-400 system
- Module replacement without PG
- SIMATIC H system operation for redundant S7 communication or DP master communication
- Data record routing (PROFIBUS DP)
- Adding or modifying distributed I/O during operation

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme-specific information was added.

SIPLUS CP 443-5-Extended	
Article No.	6AG1 443-5DX05-4XE0
Article No. based on	6GK7 443-5DX05-0XE0
Ambient temperature range	0 ... +60 °C
Conformal coating	Coating of the printed circuit boards and the electronic components
Technical specifications	The technical specifications of the standard product apply, except for the ambient conditions
Ambient conditions	
Relative humidity	100 %, condensation/frost permissible. No commissioning if condensation present.
Biologically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3B2 mold and fungal spores (excluding fauna). The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Chemically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3C4 incl. salt spray in accordance with EN60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Mechanically active substances, compliance with EN 60721-3-3	Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied plug covers must remain in place over the unused interfaces during operation!
Air pressure (depending on the highest positive temperature range specified)	1080 ... 795 hPa (-1000 ... +2000 m) see ambient temperature range 795 ... 658 hPa (+2000 ... +3500 m) derating 10 K 658 ... 540 hPa (+3500 ... +5000 m) derating 20 K

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS S7-400 CP 443-5 Extended communications processor**

for connecting SIMATIC S7-400 to PROFIBUS; Extended Version for PROFIBUS DP;
with electronic manual, on CD-ROM

Exposure to media

6AG1443-5DX05-4XE0

Accessories

See SIMATIC CP 443-5 Extended, page 1/99

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Connection methods

Front connectors

1

Overview



- For simple and user-friendly connection of sensors and actuators
- For retaining the wiring when replacing modules
- With coding to avoid mistakes when replacing modules

Ordering data

Article No.

Front connectors

48-pin for signal modules, function modules; 1 unit

- With screw contacts
- With spring-loaded terminals
- With crimp contacts

6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0

6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0

6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0

48-pin for signal modules, function modules; 84 units per pack

- With screw contacts
- With crimp contacts

6ES7492-1AL00-1AB0

6ES7492-1CL00-1AB0

for 6ES7 431-7KF00-0AB0; spare part, included in scope of delivery; 1 piece

6ES7431-7KF00-6AA0

Crimp contacts

6XX3070

250 units

Crimping tool

6XX3071

for crimping the contacts

Front cover for front connector

6ES7492-2XL00-0AA0

6 units

Connection terminal for modules

6ES7490-1BA00-0AA0

6 units

SIMATIC Manual Collection

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE0

Electronic manuals on DVD, multilingual: LOGO!, SIMADYN, SIMATIC bus components, SIMATIC C7, SIMATIC distributed I/O, SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC Sensors, SIMATIC NET, SIMATIC PC Based Automation, SIMATIC PCS 7, SIMATIC PG/PC, SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC Software, SIMATIC TDC

SIMATIC Manual Collection update service for 1 year

6ES7998-8XC01-8YE2

Current "Manual Collection" DVD and the three subsequent updates

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Connection methods

System cabling for SIMATIC S7-400

1

Overview

Wiring of SIMATIC S7 I/O modules with the sensors/actuators is a significant factor with respect to time/cost overhead, configuring, control cabinet installation, procurement and ease of service.

With SIMATIC TOP connect system cabling, it is simple and quick to establish a reliable connection for your SIMATIC S7-300/400.

With the TIA Selection Tool, a mouse click is all that is required to configure the connection from the SIMATIC S7 module to the I/O. The program automatically checks for plausibility and generates a parts list for the selected connection components that can then be ordered in the Industry Mall.

Further information can be found on the Internet at

www.siemens.com/tia-selection-tool

Flexible connection



Flexible connection enables fast, direct connection of the SIMATIC S7-300/400 input/output modules to the individual elements in the control cabinet.

Attached single cores reduce the wiring outlay.

Wire cross-sections of 0.5 mm² allow higher currents, too.

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Connection methods

S7-400 front connector with single cores

1

Overview



- Can be used for modules of the SIMATIC S7-400.
- The front connectors with single wires replace the standard SIMATIC connectors:
 - 6ES7492-1AL00-0AA0
 - 6ES7492-1BL00-0AA0
 - 6ES7492-1CL00-0AA0

Technical specifications

Front connector with single cores	
Rated operating voltage	24 V DC
Max. permissible continuous current with simultaneous load on all cores	1.0 A
Permissible ambient temperature	0 to +60 °C
Core type	H05V-K or with UL style 1007/1569 CSA TR64
Number of cores	46
Core cross-section	0.5 mm², Cu
Bundle diameter in mm	approx. 17
Core color	Blue, RAL 5010
Designation of cores	Numbered 3 to 48 (adapter contact = core number)
Assembly	Screw-type or crimp contacts

Ordering data

Article No.

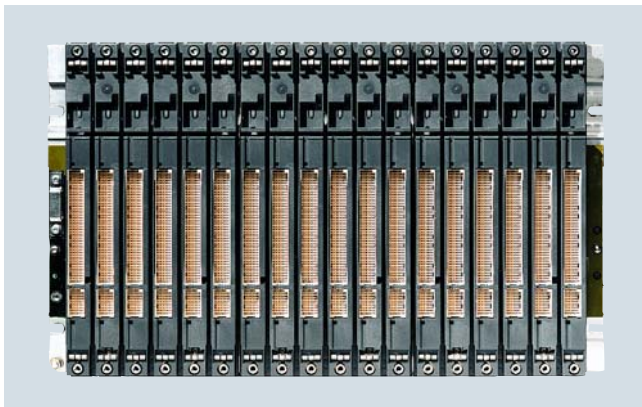
Front connector with single cores for 32-channel module SIMATIC S7-400, 46 x 0.5 mm²	
Core type H05V-K	
<u>Screw connection</u>	
Packaging unit: 1 unit Length: • 2.5 m • 3.2 m • 5 m • Custom lengths	6ES7922-4BC50-0AD0 6ES7922-4BD20-0AD0 6ES7922-4BF00-0AD0 On request
Packaging unit: 5 units Length: • 2.5 m • 3.2 m • 5 m	6ES7922-4BC50-5AD0 6ES7922-4BD20-5AD0 6ES7922-4BF00-5AD0
<u>Crimp connection</u>	
Packaging unit: 1 unit Length: • 2.5 m • 3.2 m • 5 m • Custom lengths	6ES7922-4BC50-0AE0 6ES7922-4BD20-0AE0 6ES7922-4BF00-0AE0 On request
Packaging unit: 5 units Length: • 2.5 m • 3.2 m • 5 m	6ES7922-4BC50-5AE0 6ES7922-4BD20-5AE0 6ES7922-4BF00-5AE0
Core type UL/CSA-certified	
<u>Screw-type version</u>	
Packaging unit: 1 unit • 3.2 m • 5 m • Custom lengths	6ES7922-4BD20-0UD0 6ES7922-4BF00-0UD0 On request

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Racks

Racks

Overview



- The basic mechanical framework of the SIMATIC S7-400/S7-400H
- For accommodating the modules, supplying them with operating voltage and connecting them via the backplane bus
- Several versions for configuring central controllers and expansion racks

UR1 (Universal Rack)

- For setting up central controllers and expansion units
- For holding up to 18 modules
- Also suitable for S7-400H
- Also available as aluminum rack

UR2 (Universal Rack)

- For setting up central controllers and expansion units
- For holding up to 9 modules
- Also suitable for S7-400H
- Also available as aluminum rack

CR2 (Central Rack)

- For setting up central controllers
- For holding up to 18 modules
- Segmented rack:
For operating two mutually independent S7-400 CPUs without S7-400 Multicomputing, but with communication between the CPUs over the backplane bus (C bus). Both CPUs can address their own local I/O modules (segmented P bus).

CR3 (Central Rack)

- For configuring central racks
- Optimized for distributed automation solutions due to holding up to 4 modules

UR2-H

- For configuring a complete S7-400H system in one subrack
- Also suitable for S7-400:
Operation of 2 separate CPUs with their own I/O (separate P and C buses)
- Can also be used as an expansion unit
- For holding up to 18 modules
- Also available as aluminum rack

ER1 (Extension Rack)

- For setting up expansion units economically
- For holding up to 18 modules with restricted functionality
- Also suitable for S7-400H
- Also available as aluminum rack

ER2 (Extension Rack)

- For setting up expansion units economically
- For holding up to 9 modules with restricted functionality
- Also suitable for S7-400H
- Also available as aluminum rack

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7400-1TA01-0AA0 S7-400, UR1 RACK, 18 SLOTS	6ES7400-1TA11-0AA0 S7-400, UR1 RACK ALU, 18 SLOTS	6ES7400-1JA01-0AA0 S7-400, UR2 RACK, 9 SLOTS	6ES7400-1JA11-0AA0 S7-400 RACK ALU UR2, 9 SLOTS	6ES7401-2TA01-0AA0 SIMATIC S7-400, CR2 RACK, 18 SLOTS	6ES7401-1DA01-0AA0 S7-400 CR3 RACK, 4 SLOTS
Product type designation						
Hardware configuration						
Rack						
• Communication bus	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• P bus	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Slots						
• Number of single-width slots, max.	18	18	9	9	18; 2 segments with 8 or 10 slots	4
Dimensions						
Width	482.5 mm	482.5 mm	257.5 mm	257.5 mm	482.5 mm	130 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm
Weights						
Weight, approx.	4 200 g	3 000 g	2 200 g	1 500 g	4 200 g	750 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Racks

Racks

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7400-2JA00-0AA0	6ES7400-2JA10-0AA0	6ES7403-1TA01-0AA0	6ES7403-1TA11-0AA0	6ES7403-1JA01-0AA0	6ES7403-1JA11-0AA0
	SIMATIC S7-400H, UR2-H RACK, 18 SLOTS	S7-400 MOD.TR ALU UR2-H, 18 SLOTS	SIMATIC S7-400, ER1 EXP. RACK, 18 SLOTS	S7-400, ER1 EXPANSION RACK ALU, 18 SLOTS	SIMATIC S7-400, ER2 EXP. RACK, 9 SLOTS	S7-400, ER2 EXPANSION RACK ALU, 9 SLOTS
Product type designation						
Hardware configuration						
Rack						
• Communication bus	Yes	Yes				
• P bus	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Slots						
• Number of single-width slots, max.	18	18	18	18	9	9
Dimensions						
Width	482.5 mm	482.5 mm	482.5 mm	482.5 mm	257.5 mm	257.5 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm	27.5 mm
Weights						
Weight, approx.	4 200 g	3 000 g	4 200 g	2 500 g	2 200 g	1 250 g

Ordering data

Article No.

Article No.

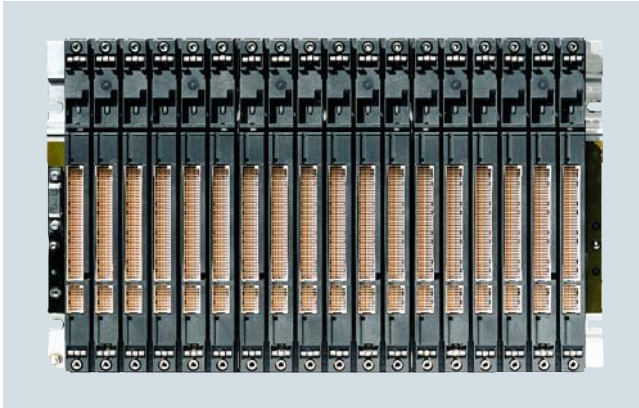
UR1 rack for central controllers and expansion units, 18 slots	6ES7400-1TA01-0AA0	UR2-H rack for split CCs, 18 slots	6ES7400-2JA00-0AA0
UR1 aluminum rack for central controllers and expansion units, 18 slots	6ES7400-1TA11-0AA0	UR2-H aluminum rack for split CCs, 18 slots	6ES7400-2JA10-0AA0
UR2 rack for central controllers and expansion units, 9 slots	6ES7400-1JA01-0AA0	ER1 rack for expansion units, P bus only, 18 slots	6ES7403-1TA01-0AA0
UR2 aluminum rack for central controllers and expansion units, 9 slots	6ES7400-1JA11-0AA0	ER1 aluminum rack for expansion units, P bus only, 18 slots	6ES7403-1TA11-0AA0
CR2 rack for segmented central controllers, 18 slots, 2 local segments	6ES7401-2TA01-0AA0	ER2 rack for expansion units, P bus only, 9 slots	6ES7403-1JA01-0AA0
CR3 rack for central controllers and expansion units, 4 slots; optimized for distributed automation solutions	6ES7401-1DA01-0AA0	ER2 aluminum rack for expansion units, P bus only, 9 slots	6ES7403-1JA11-0AA0
		Slot cover 10 units (spare part)	6ES7490-1AA00-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Racks

SIPLUS S7-400 racks

Overview



- The mechanical basic structure of SIPLUS S7-400/S7-400H
- For accommodating the modules, operating voltage supply, and connection of the modules via a backplane bus
- Several versions for setting up central controllers and expansion units
- SIPLUS rack material: Aluminum

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme-specific information was added.

For further technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1400-1TA11-7AA0	6AG1400-1JA11-7AA0	6AG1400-2JA10-7AA0
Based on	6ES7400-1TA11-0AA0	6ES7400-1JA11-0AA0	6ES7400-2JA10-0AA0
	SIPLUS S7-400 RACK UR1 18SLOT ALU	SIPLUS S-400 RACK UR2 9SLOT ALU	SIPLUS S7-400 BGT UR2-H 2X9SLOT ALU
Ambient conditions			
Ambient temperature in operation			
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin	-25 °C; = Tmin	-25 °C
• max.	70 °C; = Tmax	70 °C; = Tmax	70 °C
Extended ambient conditions			
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)		
Relative humidity			
- With condensation, max.	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)		
Resistance			
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!		
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 (RH < 75%) incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!		
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!		

Ordering data

SIPLUS S7-400 rack	Article No.	Article No.
UR1 aluminum rack		
for central controllers and expansion units, 18 slots		
Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1400-1TA11-7AA0	
UR2 aluminum rack		
for central controllers and expansion units, 9 slots		
Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1400-1JA11-7AA0	
UR2-H aluminum rack		
for central controllers and expansion units, 9 slots		
Extended temperature range and exposure to media		6AG1400-2JA10-7AA0
Accessories		See SIMATIC rack S7-400, page 1/119

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Interface modules

IM 460-0

1

Overview



- Send interface module for central expansion to 5 m
- Transmission of P and K bus
- Can be plugged into the central controller
- Up to 8 expansion racks can be connected (up to 4 per interface)
- Can be used exclusively with IM 461-0

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7460-0AA01-0AB0 TRANSMITT. INTERF.MOD. IM460-0, w. K BUS
Product type designation	
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	140 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	700 mW
Hardware configuration	
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	5 m
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	217 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	600 g

Ordering data

Article No.

IM 460-0 interface module	6ES7460-0AA01-0AB0
Send interface module for central connection up to 5 m; with C bus transmission	
468-1 connecting cable	
between IM 460-0 and IM 461-0; IM 460-3 and IM 461-3	
0.75 m	6ES7468-1AH50-0AA0
1.5 m	6ES7468-1BB50-0AA0
5 m	6ES7468-1BF00-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Interface modules

IM 461-0**Overview**

- Receive interface for centralized expansion up to 5 m
- Transmission of P and K bus
- Can be plugged into expansion rack
- To be used exclusively with IM 460-0

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7461-0AA01-0AA0 RECEIVER INTERF. MOD. IM461-0, w. K-BUS
Product type designation	
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	290 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	1 450 mW
Hardware configuration	
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	5 m
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	217 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	610 g

Ordering data**Article No.**

IM 461-0 interface module Receive interface module for central connection up to 5 m; with C bus transmission	6ES7461-0AA01-0AA0
468-1 connecting cable between IM 460-0 and IM 461-0; IM 460-3 and IM 461-3	
0.75 m	6ES7468-1AH50-0AA0
1.5 m	6ES7468-1BB50-0AA0
5 m	6ES7468-1BF00-0AA0
Terminating connector for IM 461-0	6ES7461-0AA00-7AA0

Overview



- Send interface module for central expansion to 1.5 m
- Transmission of P bus
- With voltage supply for expansion units
- Can be plugged into the central controller
- Up to 2 expansion racks can be connected (up to 1 per interface)
- Can be used exclusively with IM 461-1

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7460-1BA01-0AB0 TRANSMITT. INTERF.MOD. IM460-1,W/O K BUS
Product type designation	
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	85 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	425 mW
Hardware configuration	
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	1.5 m
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	217 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	600 g

Ordering data

Article No.

IM 460-1 interface module		6ES7460-1BA01-0AB0
Send interface module for central connection up to 1.5 m; with 5 V power supply, without C bus transmission		
468-3 connecting cable		
between IM 460-1 and IM 461-1;		
0.75 m		6ES7468-3AH50-0AA0
1.5 m		6ES7468-3BB50-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Interface modules

IM 461-1**Overview**

- Receive interface connection for centralized extension up to 1.5 m
- Transmission of P bus
- With voltage supply for expansion units
- Can be plugged into expansion unit
- Can only be used with IM 460-1

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7461-1BA01-0AA0 RECEIVER INTERF. MOD. IM461-1, W/O K-BUS
Product type designation	
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	120 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	600 mW
Hardware configuration	
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	1.5 m
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	217 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	610 g

Ordering data**Article No.**

IM 461-1 interface module	6ES7461-1BA01-0AA0
Receive IM for central coupling up to max. 1.5 m; without C bus transfer	
468-3 connecting cable	
For connecting IM 460-1 and IM 461-1	
0.75 m	6ES7468-3AH50-0AA0
1.5 m	6ES7468-3BB50-0AA0

Overview



- Send interface module for distributed expansion to 102 m
- Transmission of K and P bus
- Can be plugged into the central controller
- Up to 8 expansion racks can be connected (up to 4 per interface)
- Can be used exclusively with IM 461-3

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7460-3AA01-0AB0 TRANSMITT. INTERF.MOD- IM460-3,UP TO 102M	
Product type designation		
Input current		
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	1 550 mA	
Power losses		
Power loss, max.	7 750 mW	
Hardware configuration		
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	102.25 m	
Dimensions		
Width	25 mm	
Height	290 mm	
Depth	217 mm	
Weights		
Weight, approx.	630 g	

Ordering data

Article No.

IM 460-3 interface module	6ES7460-3AA01-0AB0
Send interface module for distributed connection up to 102 m; with C bus transmission	
468-1 connecting cable	
between IM 460-3 and IM 461-3	
0.75 m	6ES7468-1AH50-0AA0
1.5 m	6ES7468-1BB50-0AA0
5 m	6ES7468-1BF00-0AA0
10 m	6ES7468-1CB00-0AA0
25 m	6ES7468-1CC50-0AA0
50 m	6ES7468-1CF00-0AA0
100 m	6ES7468-1DB00-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Interface modules

IM 461-3**Overview**

- Receive interface for distributed expansion up to 102 m
- Transmission of data from the P-bus and C-bus
- Can be plugged into expansion rack
- To be used exclusively with IM 460-3

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7461-3AA01-0AA0 RECEIVER INTERF. MOD. IM461-3, UP TO 102M
Product type designation	
Input current	
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	620 mA
Power losses	
Power loss, max.	3 100 mW
Hardware configuration	
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	102.25 m
Dimensions	
Width	25 mm
Height	290 mm
Depth	217 mm
Weights	
Weight, approx.	620 g

Ordering data**Article No.**

IM 461-3 interface module	6ES7461-3AA01-0AA0
Receive interface module for distributed connection up to 102 m; with C bus transmission	
468-1 connecting cable	
between IM 460-3 and IM 461-3	
0.75 m	6ES7468-1AH50-0AA0
1.5 m	6ES7468-1BB50-0AA0
5 m	6ES7468-1BF00-0AA0
10 m	6ES7468-1CB00-0AA0
25 m	6ES7468-1CC50-0AA0
50 m	6ES7468-1CF00-0AA0
100 m	6ES7468-1DB00-0AA0
Terminating connector	6ES7461-3AA00-7AA0
for IM 461-3	

Overview



- Send interface for distributed expansion with SIMATIC S5 expansion racks up to 600 m
- Can be plugged into the central controller
- Up to 8 SIMATIC S5 expansion racks can be connected (up to 4 per interface)
- Can be used exclusively with IM 314

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7463-2AA00-0AA0 TRANSMITT. INTERF.MOD- IM463-2, COUPL. M. S5	
Product type designation		
Input current		
from backplane bus 5 V DC, max.	1 320 mA	
Power losses		
Power loss, max.	6 600 mW	
Hardware configuration		
Cable length between first and last interface module, max.	600 m	
Dimensions		
Width	25 mm	
Height	290 mm	
Depth	217 mm	
Weights		
Weight, approx.	360 g	

Ordering data

Article No.

IM 463-2 interface module
 Receiving IM for distributed coupling of SIMATIC S5-EUs up to max. 600 m

6ES7463-2AA00-0AA0

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller**SIPLUS S7-400 interface modules****SIPLUS S7-400 IM 460-0**

1

Overview

- Send interface module for centralized expansion up to 5 m
- Transfer from P and K Bus
- Plug into central controller
- You may connect up to 8 expansion units (max. 4 per port)
- Usable exclusively with IM 461-0

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1460-0AA01-2AB0
Based on	6ES7460-0AA01-0AB0 SIPLUS S7-400 IM460-0 TX
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	60 °C; = Tmax
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data**Article No.****SIPLUS S7-400 interface module IM 460-0**

Send IM for central coupling
up to 5 m; with K-bus transfer

Extended temperature range and
exposure to media

6AG1460-0AA01-2AB0**Accessories**

See SIMATIC IM 460-0,
page 1/122

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

SIPLUS S7-400 interface modules

SIPLUS S7-400 IM 461-0

1

Overview



- Receive interface connection for central extension up to 5 m
- Transfer from P and K Bus
- Pluggable in extension device
- Usable exclusively with IM 460-0

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1461-0AA01-2AA0
Based on	6ES7461-0AA01-0AA0 SIPLUS S7-400 IM461-0 RX
Ambient conditions	
Ambient temperature in operation	
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin
• max.	60 °C; = Tmax
Extended ambient conditions	
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity	
- With condensation	100 %; Relative humidity, incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under conden- sation conditions)
Resistance	
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!

Ordering data

Article No.

SIPLUS S7-400 interface module IM 461-0	
Receiver IM for central coupling up to 5 m; with C-bus transfer	
Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1461-0AA01-2AA0
Accessories	See SIMATIC IM 461-0, page 1/123

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Power supplies

PS 405/407 power supplies

Overview



- Power supplies for SIMATIC S7-400
- For conversion of AC or DC line voltages to the 5 V DC and 24 V DC operating voltages required
- 4 A, 10 A and 20 A output currents
- In addition:
 - SIPLUS power supply 6AG1405-0KA02-2AA0 for temperature range of -25 to +60 °C and use under medium load (e.g. chlorine/sulfur atmosphere). Technical specifications similar to 6ES7405-0KA02-0AA0
 - SIPLUS power supply 6AG1407-0KA02-4AA0 for use under medium load (e.g. chlorine/sulfur atmosphere). Technical specifications similar to 6ES7407-0KA02-0AA0
 - SIPLUS power supply 6AG1407-0KR02-4AA0 for use under medium load (e.g. chlorine/sulfur atmosphere). Technical specifications as for 6ES7407-0KR02-0AA0

Technical specifications

Article number	6ES7405-0DA02-0AA0	6ES7405-0KA02-0AA0	6ES7405-0KR02-0AA0	6ES7405-0RA02-0AA0
	PS405 POWER SUPPLY, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/4A	POWER SUPP. PS405, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/10A	POWER SUPP. PS405, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/10A, RED	PS405 POWER SUPPLY, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/20A
Product type designation				
Supply voltage				
Rated value (DC)				
• 24 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• 48 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• 60 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
permissible range, lower limit (DC)	19.2 V; Dynamic 18.5 V	19.2 V; Dynamic 18.5 V	19.2 V; Dynamic 18.5 V	19.2 V; Dynamic 18.5 V
permissible range, upper limit (DC)	72 V; dynamic 75.5 V	72 V; dynamic 75.5 V	72 V; dynamic 75.5 V	72 V; dynamic 75.5 V
Mains buffering				
• Mains/voltage failure stored energy time	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms
• Mains buffering according to NAMUR recommendation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Input current				
Rated value at 24 V DC	2 A	4 A	4 A	7 A
Rated value at 48 V DC	1 000 mA	2 A	2 A	3.2 A
Rated value at 60 V DC	800 mA	1.6 A	1.6 A	2.5 A
Inrush current, max.	18 A; Full width at half maximum 20 ms	18 A; Full width at half maximum 20 ms	18 A; Full width at half maximum 20 ms	56 A; Full width at half maximum 1.5 ms
Output voltage				
Type of output voltage	DC	DC	DC	DC
Rated value (DC)				
• 5 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• 24 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Output current				
for backplane bus (5 V DC), max.	4 A; no base load required	10 A; no base load required	10 A; no base load required	20 A; no base load required
for backplane bus (24 V DC), max.	0.5 A; idling-proof	1 A; idling-proof	1 A; idling-proof	1 A; idling-proof
short-circuit protection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Power				
Power consumption, typ.	48 W	95 W	95 W	168 W
Power losses				
Power loss, typ.	16 W	20 W	20 W	44 W
Battery				
Backup battery				
• Backup battery				
- Backup battery (optional)	Yes; 1 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah	Yes; 2 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah	Yes; 2 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah	Yes; 2 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Power supplies

PS 405/407 power supplies

1

Technical specifications (continued)

Article number	6ES7405-0DA02-0AA0 PS405 POWER SUPPLY, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/4A	6ES7405-0KA02-0AA0 POWER SUPP. PS405, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/10A	6ES7405-0KR02-0AA0 POWER SUPP. PS405, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/10A, RED	6ES7405-0RA02-0AA0 PS405 POWER SUPPLY, DC24/48/60V, DC5V/20A
Hardware configuration				
Slots				
• Required slots	1	2	2	2
Galvanic isolation				
primary/secondary	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Degree and class of protection				
Protection class	1; with protective conductor	1; with protective conductor	1; with protective conductor	1; with protective conductor
Standards, approvals, certificates				
FM approval	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4
Connection method				
Connecting cables/cross sections	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm
Dimensions				
Width	25 mm	50 mm	50 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	217 mm	217 mm	217 mm	217 mm
Weights				
Weight, approx.	760 g	1 200 g	1 200 g	1 300 g
Article number	6ES7407-0DA02-0AA0 POWER SUPPLY PS407, 120/230V UC, 5V DC/4A	6ES7407-0KA02-0AA0 PS407 POWER SUPPLY, 120/230V UC, 5V DC/10A	6ES7407-0KR02-0AA0 POWER SUPP. PS407, UC120/230V, DC5V/10A, RED.	6ES7407-0RA02-0AA0 PS407 POWER SUPPLY, 120/230V UC, 5V DC/20A
Product type designation				
Supply voltage				
Rated value (DC)				
• 120 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• 230 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
permissible range, lower limit (DC)	88 V	88 V	88 V	88 V
permissible range, upper limit (DC)	300 V	300 V	300 V	300 V
Rated value (AC)				
• 120 V AC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• 230 V AC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
permissible range, lower limit (AC)	85 V	85 V	85 V	85 V
permissible range, upper limit (AC)	264 V	264 V	264 V	264 V
Line frequency				
• Rated value 50 Hz	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Rated value 60 Hz	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• permissible frequency range, lower limit	47 Hz	47 Hz	47 Hz	47 Hz
• permissible frequency range, upper limit	63 Hz	63 Hz	63 Hz	63 Hz
Mains buffering				
• Mains/voltage failure stored energy time	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms	20 ms
• Mains buffering according to NAMUR recommendation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Input current				
Rated value at 110 V DC	350 mA; at 120 V DC	1 A; at 120 V DC	1 A; at 120 V DC	1.4 A; at 120 V DC
Rated value at 230 V DC	190 mA	0.5 A	0.5 A	0.7 A
Rated value at 120 V AC	0.42 A	0.9 A	0.9 A	1.4 A
Rated value at 230 V AC	0.22 A	0.5 A	0.5 A	0.7 A
Inrush current, max.	8.25 A; Full width at half maximum 5 ms	63 A; Full width at half maximum 1 ms	63 A; Full width at half maximum 1 ms	88 A; Full width at half maximum 1.1 ms

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller**Power supplies****PS 405/407 power supplies****Technical specifications (continued)**

Article number	6ES7407-0DA02-0AA0 POWER SUPPLY PS407, 120/230V UC, 5V DC/4A	6ES7407-0KA02-0AA0 PS407 POWER SUPPLY, 120/230V UC, 5V DC/10A	6ES7407-0KR02-0AA0 POWER SUPP. PS407, UC120/230V, DC5V/10A, RED.	6ES7407-0RA02-0AA0 PS407 POWER SUPPLY, 120/230V UC, 5V DC/20A
Output voltage				
Type of output voltage	DC	DC	DC	DC
Rated value (DC)				
• 5 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• 24 V DC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Output current				
for backplane bus (5 V DC), max.	4 A; no base load required	10 A; no base load required	10 A; no base load required	20 A; no base load required
for backplane bus (24 V DC), max.	0.5 A; idling-proof	1 A; idling-proof	1 A; idling-proof	1 A; idling-proof
short-circuit protection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Power				
Power consumption, typ.	52 W	95 W	95 W	158 W
Power losses				
Power loss, typ.	20 W	20 W	20 W	35 W
Battery				
Backup battery				
• Backup battery				
- Backup battery (optional)	Yes; 1 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah	Yes; 2 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah	Yes; 2 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah	Yes; 2 x lithium AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah
Hardware configuration				
Slots				
• Required slots	1	2	2	2
Galvanic isolation				
primary/secondary	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
EMC				
Compliance with line harmonic distortion limits				
• Observance of line harmonic distortion acc. to IEC 61000-3-2, IEC 61000-3-3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Degree and class of protection				
Protection class	1; with protective conductor	1; with protective conductor	1; with protective conductor	1; with protective conductor
Standards, approvals, certificates				
FM approval	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4	Yes; Ta: 0 °C to 60 °C T4
Connection method				
Connecting cables/cross sections	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm	3x 1.5 mm ² , solid or stranded wire with end sleeve, external diameter 3 mm to 9 mm
Dimensions				
Width	25 mm	50 mm	50 mm	50 mm
Height	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm	290 mm
Depth	217 mm	217 mm	217 mm	217 mm
Weights				
Weight, approx.	760 g	1 200 g	1 200 g	1 300 g

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Power supplies

PS 405/407 power supplies

1

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
PS 405 power supply modules		PS 407 power supply modules	
24 V DC; 5 V DC, 24 V DC		120/230 V AC; 5 V DC, 24 V DC	
4 A	6ES7405-0DA02-0AA0	4 A	6ES7407-0DA02-0AA0
10 A, wide range	6ES7405-0KA02-0AA0	10 A	6ES7407-0KA02-0AA0
10 A, redundant, wide range	6ES7405-0KR02-0AA0	10 A, redundant	6ES7407-0KR02-0AA0
20 A, wide range	6ES7405-0RA02-0AA0	20 A	6ES7407-0RA02-0AA0
Power plug for PS 405	6ES7490-0AA00-0AA0	Power plug for PS 407	6ES7490-0AB00-0AA0
Spare part		Spare part	
Backup battery	6ES7971-0BA00	Backup battery	6ES7971-0BA00
Type AA; 3.6 V/2.3 Ah		Type AA; 3.6 V / 2.3 Ah	
		SITOP power supplies	Refer to Catalog KT 10.1
		For the 24 V supply of motors or sensors	
		Add-on modules and DC-UPS	Refer to Catalog KT 10.1
		To increase system availability	

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller**SIPLUS power supplies****SIPLUS S7-400 power supplies****Overview**

- Power supplies for SIPLUS S7-400
- For conversion of AC or DC line voltages to the 5 V DC and 24 V DC operating voltages required
- 4 A, 10 A and 20 A output currents

Note:

SIPLUS extreme products are based on SIMATIC standard products. The contents listed here were taken from the respective standard products. SIPLUS extreme specific information was added.

For technical documentation on SIPLUS, see:
www.siemens.com/siplus-extreme

Technical specifications

Article number	6AG1405-0KA02-7AA0	6AG1405-0KR02-7AA0	6AG1407-0KA02-7AA0	6AG1407-0KR02-7AA0
Based on	6ES7405-0KA02-0AA0 SIPLUS PS 405 10A	6ES7405-0KR02-0AA0 SIPLUS S7-400 PS405 DC 10A RED	6ES7407-0KA02-0AA0 SIPLUS S7-400 PS407 UC 10A	6ES7407-0KR02-0AA0 SIPLUS S7-400 PS407 UC 10A RED
Ambient conditions				
Ambient temperature in operation				
• Min.	-25 °C; = Tmin	-25 °C; = Tmin; using the external battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for buffer mode	-25 °C; using the external battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for buffer mode	-25 °C; using the external battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for buffer mode
• max.	70 °C; = Tmax	70 °C; = Tmax; using the external battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for buffer mode	70 °C; using the external battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for buffer mode	70 °C; using the external battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for buffer mode
Extended ambient conditions				
• Relative to ambient temperature-atmospheric pressure-installation altitude	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)	Tmin ... Tmax at 1080 hPa ... 795 hPa (-1000 m ... +2000 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 10K) at 795 hPa ... 658 hPa (+2000 m ... +3500 m) // Tmin ... (Tmax - 20K) at 658 hPa ... 540 hPa (+3500 m ... +5000 m)
Relative humidity				
- With condensation, max.	100 %; RH incl. condensation / frost permitted (no commissioning under condensation conditions)	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning if there is condensation). In buffer mode, use battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for high humidity	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning if there is condensation). In buffer mode, use battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for high humidity	100 %; RH incl. condensation/frost (no commissioning if there is condensation). In buffer mode, use battery box SIPLUS 6AG1971-0AA00-7AA0 for high humidity
Resistance				
- against biologically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3B2 mold, fungus and dry rot spores (with the exception of fauna). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation in corrosive atmospheres!			
- against chemically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3C4 incl. salt spray according to EN 60068-2-52 (degree of severity 3). The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!			
- against mechanically active substances / conformity with EN 60721-3-3	Yes; Class 3S4 incl. sand, dust. The supplied connector covers must remain on the unused interfaces during operation!			

Ordering data	Article No.		Article No.
SIPLUS S7-400 PS 405 power supply modules In: 24/48/60 V DC - wide range (19.2 ... 72 V DC); Out: 24 V DC/1 A, 5 V DC/10 A Extended temperature range and exposure to media In: 24/48/60 V DC - wide range (19.2 ... 72 V DC); Out: 24 V DC/1 A, 5 V DC/10 A; for redundant use Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1405-0KA02-7AA0 6AG1405-0KR02-7AA0	SIPLUS S7-400 PS 407 power supply modules In: 110/230 V DC; 120/230 V AC; Out: 24 V DC/1 A, 5 V DC/10 A Extended temperature range and exposure to media In: 110/230 V DC; 120/230 V AC; Out: 24 V DC/1 A, 5 V DC/10 A; for redundant use Extended temperature range and exposure to media	6AG1407-0KA02-7AA0 6AG1407-0KR02-7AA0 See SIMATIC PS 405/407 power supplies, page 1/133

SIMATIC S7-400 advanced controller

Accessories

Labeling sheets

Overview

Labeling sheets

- Film sheets for application-specific labeling of SIMATIC S7-400 I/O modules with commercial laser printers
- Single-color films, tear-resistant, dirt-resistant
- Easy handling:
 - Pre-perforated labeling sheets in DIN A4 format to allow easy separation of the labeling strips
 - The separated strips can be inserted directly into the I/O modules
- Different colors for distinction between module types or preferred areas of application:
The labeling sheets are available in the colors teal, light beige, red and yellow. Yellow is reserved for failsafe systems.

Label cover

- Film to cover and hold user-made labeling strips on normal paper
- Accessories, 10 pieces

Ordering data

Article No.

Labeling sheets

DIN A4, for printing using laser printer; 10 pieces

Petrol

6ES7492-2AX00-0AA0

Light beige

6ES7492-2BX00-0AA0

Yellow

6ES7492-2CX00-0AA0

Red

6ES7492-2DX00-0AA0

Cover film for labeling strips

6ES7492-2XX00-0AA0

10 pieces (spare part)

Spare parts

Overview

Cover film for labeling strips

- Petrol-colored film for covering and fixing labeling strips created by the user
- On normal paper
- Spare part

Measuring range module for analog input modules

- Pluggable module for selecting the input ranges in the case of analog modules
- 1 module for 2 inputs
- Spare part

Slot cover

- Cover plates for unused slots in module racks
- Spare part, 10 units

Power supply connectors

- Plug for connecting the PS 405 and PS 407 power supply modules to the network
- Spare part

Ordering data

Article No.

Cover foil for labeling strip

10 units (spare part)

6ES7492-2XX00-0AA0

Range card for analog input modules

1 card for 2 inputs; 2 units (spare part)

6ES7974-0AA00-0AA0

Slot covers

for racks; 10 units (spare part)

6ES7490-1AA00-0AA0

Power plug for PS 405

Spare part

6ES7490-0AA00-0AA0

Power plug for PS 407

Spare part

6ES7490-0AB00-0AA0



2/2

Conditions of sale and delivery

Conditions of sale and delivery

1. General Provisions

By using this catalog you can acquire hardware and software products described therein from Siemens AG subject to the following Terms and Conditions of Sale and Delivery (hereinafter referred to as "T&C"). Please note that the scope, the quality and the conditions for supplies and services, including software products, by any Siemens entity having a registered office outside Germany, shall be subject exclusively to the General Terms and Conditions of the respective Siemens entity. The following T&C apply exclusively for orders placed with Siemens Aktiengesellschaft, Germany.

1.1 For customers with a seat or registered office in Germany

For customers with a seat or registered office in Germany, the following applies subordinate to the T&C:

- the "General Terms of Payment"¹⁾ and,
- for software products, the "General License Conditions for Software Products for Automation and Drives for Customers with a Seat or Registered Office in Germany"¹⁾ and,
- for other supplies and services, the "General Conditions for the Supply of Products and Services of the Electrical and Electronics Industry"¹⁾.

1.2 For customers with a seat or registered office outside Germany

For customers with a seat or registered office outside Germany, the following applies subordinate to the T&C:

- the "General Terms of Payment"¹⁾ and,
- for software products, the "General License Conditions for Software Products for Automation and Drives for Customers with a Seat or Registered Office outside of Germany"¹⁾ and
- for other supplies and/or services, the "General Conditions for Supplies of Siemens Industry for Customers with a Seat or Registered Office outside of Germany"¹⁾.

2. Prices

The prices are in € (Euro) ex point of delivery, exclusive of packaging.

The sales tax (value added tax) is not included in the prices. It shall be charged separately at the respective rate according to the applicable statutory legal regulations.

Prices are subject to change without prior notice. We will charge the prices valid at the time of delivery.

To compensate for variations in the price of raw materials (e.g. silver, copper, aluminum, lead, gold, dysprosium and neodym), surcharges are calculated on a daily basis using the so-called metal factor for products containing these raw materials. A surcharge for the respective raw material is calculated as a supplement to the price of a product if the basic official price of the raw material in question is exceeded.

The metal factor of a product indicates the basic official price (for those raw materials concerned) as of which the surcharges on the price of the product are applied, and with what method of calculation.

An exact explanation of the metal factor can be downloaded at:

www.siemens.com/automation/salesmaterial-as/catalog/en/terms_of_trade_en.pdf

To calculate the surcharge (except in the cases of dysprosium and neodym), the official price from the day prior to that on which the order was received or the release order was effected is used.

To calculate the surcharge applicable to dysprosium and neodym ("rare earths"), the corresponding three-month basic average price in the quarter prior to that in which the order was received or the release order was effected is used with a one-month buffer (details on the calculation can be found in the explanation of the metal factor).

3. Additional Terms and Conditions

The dimensions are in mm. In Germany, according to the German law on units in measuring technology, data in inches apply only to devices for export.

Illustrations are not binding.

Insofar as there are no remarks on the individual pages of this catalog - especially with regard to data, dimensions and weights given - these are subject to change without prior notice.

4. Export regulations

We shall not be obligated to fulfill any agreement if such fulfillment is prevented by any impediments arising out of national or international foreign trade or customs requirements or any embargoes and/or other sanctions.

Export of goods listed in this catalog may be subject to licensing requirements. We will indicate in the delivery details whether licenses are required under German, European and US export lists. Goods labeled with "AL" not equal to "N" are subject to European or German export authorization when being exported out of the EU. Goods labeled with "ECCN" not equal to "N" are subject to US re-export authorization.

The export indications can be viewed in advance in the description of the respective goods on the Industry Mall, our online catalog system. Only the export labels "AL" and "ECCN" indicated on order confirmations, delivery notes and invoices are authoritative.

Even without a label, or with label "AL:N" or "ECCN:N", authorization may be required i .a. due to the final disposition and intended use of goods.

If you transfer goods (hardware and/or software and/or technology as well as corresponding documentation, regardless of the mode of provision) delivered by us or works and services (including all kinds of technical support) performed by us to a third party worldwide, you must comply with all applicable national and international (re-)export control regulations.

If required for the purpose of conducting export control checks, you (upon request by us) shall promptly provide us with all information pertaining to the particular end customer, final disposition and intended use of goods delivered by us respectively works and services provided by us, as well as to any export control restrictions existing in this relation.

The products listed in this catalog may be subject to European/German and/or US export regulations. Any export requiring approval is therefore subject to authorization by the relevant authorities.

Errors excepted and subject to change without prior notice.

1) The text of the Terms and Conditions of Siemens AG can be downloaded at
www.siemens.com/automation/salesmaterial-as/catalog/en/terms_of_trade_en.pdf

Further information can be obtained from our branch offices listed at www.siemens.com/automation-contact

Interactive Catalog on DVD		<i>Catalog</i>
Products for Automation and Drives	CA 01	
Building Control		
GAMMA Building Control	ET G1	
Drive Systems		
SINAMICS G130 Drive Converter Chassis Units	D 11	
SINAMICS G150 Drive Converter Cabinet Units		
SINAMICS GM150, SINAMICS SM150	D 12	
Medium-Voltage Converters		
SINAMICS PERFECT HARMONY GH180	D 15.1	
Medium-Voltage Air-Cooled Drives (Germany Edition)		
SINAMICS G180	D 18.1	
Converters – Compact Units, Cabinet Systems, Cabinet Units Air-Cooled and Liquid-Cooled		
SINAMICS S120 Chassis Format Units and Cabinet Modules	D 21.3	
SINAMICS S150 Converter Cabinet Units		
SINAMICS S120 and SIMOTICS	D 21.4	
SINAMICS DCM DC Converter, Control Module	D 23.1	
SINAMICS DCM Cabinet	D 23.2	
SINAMICS Inverters for Single-Axis Drives and SIMOTICS Motors	D 31	
<i>Digital: SINAMICS G120P and SINAMICS G120P Cabinet pump, fan, compressor converters</i>	D 35	
LOHER VARIO High Voltage Motors	D 83.2	
Flameproof, Type Series 1PS4, 1PS5, 1MV4 and 1MV5		
Frame Size 355 to 1000, Power Range 80 to 7100 kW		
Three-Phase Induction Motors	D 84.1	
SIMOTICS HV, SIMOTICS TN		
High Voltage Three-phase Induction Motors	D 84.9	
SIMOTICS HV Series A-compact PLUS		
Three-Phase Induction Motors SIMOTICS HV, Series H-compact	D 86.1	
Synchronous Motors with Permanent-Magnet Technology, HT-direct	D 86.2	
DC Motors	DA 12	
SIMOREG DC MASTER 6RA70 Digital Chassis Converters	DA 21.1	
SIMOREG K 6RA22 Analog Chassis Converters	DA 21.2	
<i>Digital: SIMOREG DC MASTER 6RM70 Digital Converter Cabinet Units</i>	DA 22	
SIMOVERT PM Modular Converter Systems	DA 45	
SIEMOSYN Motors	DA 48	
MICROMASTER 420/430/440 Inverters	DA 51.2	
MICROMASTER 411/COMBIMASTER 411	DA 51.3	
<u>Low-Voltage Three-Phase-Motors</u>		
SIMOTOCS S-1FG1 Servo geared motors	D 41	
SIMOTICS Low-Voltage Motors	D 81.1	
SIMOTICS FD Low-Voltage Motors	D 81.8	
LOHER Low-Voltage Motors	D 83.1	
MOTOX Geared Motors	D 87.1	
SIMOGEAR Geared Motors	MD 50.1	
SIMOGEAR Gearboxes with adapter	MD 50.11	
<u>Mechanical Driving Machines</u>		
FLENDER Standard Couplings	MD 10.1	
FLENDER High Performance Couplings	MD 10.2	
FLENDER Backlash-free Couplings	MD 10.3	
FLENDER SIP Standard industrial planetary gear units	MD 31.1	
Process Instrumentation and Analytics		
<i>Digital: Field Instruments for Process Automation</i>	FI 01	
<i>Digital: Display Recorders SIREC D</i>	MP 20	
<i>Digital: SIPART Controllers and Software</i>	MP 31	
Products for Weighing Technology	WT 10	
Process Analytical Instruments	AP 01	
<i>Digital: Process Analytics, Components for Continuous Emission Monitoring</i>	AP 11	
Low-Voltage Power Distribution and Electrical Installation Technology		<i>Catalog</i>
SENTRON · SIVACON · ALPHA	LV 10	
Protection, Switching, Measuring and Monitoring Devices, Switchboards and Distribution Systems		
Standards-Compliant Components for Photovoltaic Plants	LV 11	
Electrical Components for the Railway Industry	LV 12	
TÜV-certified Power Monitoring System	LV 14	
Components for Industrial Control Panels according to UL Standards	LV 16	
3WT Air Circuit Breakers up to 4000 A	LV 35	
3VT Molded Case Circuit Breakers up to 1600 A	LV 36	
<i>Digital: SIVACON System Cubicles, System Lighting and System Air-Conditioning</i>	LV 50	
<i>Digital: ALPHA Distribution Systems</i>	LV 51	
ALPHA FIX Terminal Blocks	LV 52	
SIVACON S4 Power Distribution Boards	LV 56	
SIVACON 8PS Busbar Trunking Systems	LV 70	
<i>Digital: DELTA Switches and Socket Outlets</i>	ET D1	
Motion Control		
SINUMERIK 840	NC 62	
Equipment for Machine Tools		
SINUMERIK 808	NC 81.1	
Equipment for Machine Tools		
SINUMERIK 828	NC 82	
Equipment for Machine Tools		
SIMOTION	PM 21	
Equipment for Production Machines		
<i>Digital: Drive and Control Components for Cranes</i>	CR 1	
Power Supply		
SITOP Power supply	KT 10.1	
Safety Integrated		
Safety Technology for Factory Automation	SI 10	
SIMATIC HMI / PC-based Automation		
Human Machine Interface Systems/PC-based Automation	ST 80/ ST PC	
SIMATIC Ident		
Industrial Identification Systems	ID 10	
SIMATIC Industrial Automation Systems		
Products for Totally Integrated Automation	ST 70	
SIMATIC PCS 7 Process Control System	ST PCS 7	
System components		
SIMATIC PCS 7 Process Control System	ST PCS 7 T	
Technology components		
Add-ons for the SIMATIC PCS 7 Process Control System	ST PCS 7 AO	
SIMATIC NET		
Industrial Communication	IK PI	
SIRIUS Industrial Controls		
SIRIUS Industrial Controls	IC 10	
<i>Digital: These catalogs are only available as a PDF.</i>		
Information and Download Center		
Digital versions of the catalogs are available on the Internet at: www.siemens.com/industry/infocenter		
There you'll find additional catalogs in other languages.		
Please note the section "Downloading catalogs" on page "Online services" in the appendix of this catalog.		

Get more information

Comprehensive information concerning SIMATIC S7-400:
www.siemens.com/s7-400

Siemens AG
Process Industries and Drives
Automation and Engineering
76181 Karlsruhe
Germany

© Siemens AG 2017
Subject to change without prior notice
PDF (E86060-K4678-A151-A1-7600)
KG 0517 144 En
Produced in Germany

The information provided in this catalog contains descriptions or characteristics of performance which in case of actual use do not always apply as described or which may change as a result of further development of the products. An obligation to provide the respective characteristics shall only exist if expressly agreed in the terms of contract. Availability and technical specifications are subject to change without notice.

All product designations may be trademarks or product names of Siemens AG or supplier companies whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owners.

Security information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens' products and solutions only form one element of such a concept.

Customer is responsible to prevent unauthorized access to its plants, systems, machines and networks. Systems, machines and components should only be connected to the enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent necessary and with appropriate security measures (e.g. use of firewalls and network segmentation) in place.

Additionally, Siemens' guidance on appropriate security measures should be taken into account. For more information about industrial security, please visit **www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity**.

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends to apply product updates as soon as available and to always use the latest product versions. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply latest updates may increase customer's exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed under **www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity**.